

American Language  
Course

1200

English Department  
School of International Relations

## CONTENTS

<u>UNIT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
1201	1
1202	31
1203	59
1204	93
1205	125
1206	159
1207	185
1208	217
1209	251
1210	283
Appendix	317
Index	335

## GUIDE FOR INSTRUCTORS

### Introduction

This is the second volume in the elementary phase of the American Language Course for foreign students. It is accompanied by 30 prerecorded tapes and by the Student Workbook 1100-1400. There is also an instructor text for books 1100-1400 containing an outline of major structures and special notes on the student text and on sounds and intonations.

### Objectives

The object of the instruction outlined in this volume is to continue the development of an ability in the student to use the English language. You will notice that this student study guide is intended to reinforce the vocabulary and structures in American English already introduced, as well as to introduce the student to new vocabulary and structures with emphasis on pronunciation and aural.

### Methods of Presentation

The units contain dialog material and a variety of drills and exercises. The conversational dialogs should be practiced in classroom and language laboratory drill until the students are able to speak the parts of each dialog easily.

Students generally learn by doing; therefore, you should concentrate on practices involving the students in learning situations rather than on what you are going to explain to them. For this reason explanations have been held to a minimum in this volume. Be sure your students know the homework they are to do before they come to the next class. Carefully explain the purpose and the pattern of each drill. A confused student often practices errors and wastes time in an unprofitable activity.

### Prerecorded Tapes

Each prerecorded tape provides material for laboratory instruction. Each tape is numbered to correspond to the classroom unit it supports. The tapes require the student to participate by recording his voice in a variety of drills.

It is important that each student know exactly what he is to do in the laboratory. He should also know all vocabulary items and grammatical structures. It is also necessary that the student have some guided practice in pronunciation of new terms so that his practice helps him sharpen his aural comprehension and improve his fluency.

### Student Workbook Assignments

The Student Workbook, Volume 1100-1400, contains homework assignments related to the units in this book. Note carefully that some of the homework is designed as review of material taught in class, and that some is designed as preparation for the classwork to come. Be sure the student understands this. Some workbook exercises employ programming techniques and provide their own answers. It will not be necessary for you to "correct" them. The student should do this himself. It may be wise to skim through a few completed programmed exercises early in the course to be sure the students understand how to respond to them.

OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

Special Expressions:

Get on  
Get off  
May-Might  
Expect to  
Plan to  
Hope to  
Want to

Progressive Verbs Forms

Present tense  
Past tense

Future Tense

Use of Contractions  
Formation of Questions  
Formation of Negative Sentences

Sound and Intonation

Intonation Pattern Used in Addressing Another Person

Voiced and Voiceless th (/ð/ and /θ/ )

Conversation On A Bus



## UNIT 1201

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

Dialog

A: Does this bus go to the train station?

B: No, but I'll give you a transfer.

A: Where do I get off?

B: At Tenth Street. I'll let you know.

A: What bus do I get?

B: Take the bus marked Central Station.

A: Will I get there before 7:30?

B: Yes, you'll have plenty of time.

B: We're coming to Tenth Street now.

A: Do I get off here?

B: At the next stop.

A: O. K. Thanks a lot.

B: Not at all!

Special Expressions

GET ON  
GET OFF

1. I GET ON the bus at First Street.  
I GET OFF the bus at Tenth Street.
2. We GET ON the train in New York.  
We GET OFF the train in Chicago.
3. They GET ON the streetcar at Fourth Avenue.  
They GET OFF the streetcar at Seventh Avenue.
4. He GETS ON the plane at 10:00 a. m.  
He GETS OFF the plane at 1:00 p. m.
5. She GETS ON the boat in New York.  
She GETS OFF the boat in Southampton.
6. Where do I GET ON the bus?  
At Nineteenth Street.
7. Where do I GET OFF the bus?  
At Thirty-first Street.

## Reading

There are a lot of buses in this city. The bus fare is twenty-five cents. Many people ride the buses every day. They ride to work. They ride to the train station. They ride downtown. They ride to school. Then they take the bus home again.

The buses are often crowded. Sometimes there aren't any empty seats. Many people stand up.

The buses go everywhere in the city. They give good service. People can get a bus on most streets. The bus drivers help the passengers. The drivers know all the streets in the city. The buses are very important to the people.

## New Vocabulary

city  
bus  
people  
home  
seat

train  
station  
street  
ride  
stand up

get  
know  
give  
take  
crowded

## Word Drill

1. city  
in the city  
people  
many people  
There are many people in the city.
2. home  
homes  
in homes  
The people live in homes in the city.
3. seat  
seats  
seats in the buses  
There are a lot of seats in the buses.
4. ride  
ride the bus  
to the station  
We ride the bus to the station.
5. takes  
takes them  
takes them to the station  
The bus takes them to the station.
6. buses  
a lot of buses  
streets  
on the streets  
There are a lot of buses on the streets.
7. trains  
station  
the station  
in the station  
There are a lot of trains in the station.
8. crowded  
is crowded  
is very crowded  
The bus is very crowded.
9. stand  
stand up  
stand up in the bus  
We have to stand up in the bus.
10. gives  
gives service  
gives good service  
That driver gives good service
11. know  
know the streets  
The bus drivers know the streets.

## Exercises

Give complete yes and no answers to the questions.

**Example:** Does she ride to work every day?  
Yes, she rides to work every day.  
No, she doesn't ride to work every day.

1. Does the boy go to school in the morning?
2. Do you take a bus in the afternoon?
3. Does he work in a bank?
4. Do the students know the answer?
5. Does the student have a book?
6. Are you a student?
7. Are those men doctors?
8. Is he in the bank now?
9. Am I a teacher?

## Exercise

Answer the following questions using get on or get off. Use yes and no answers.

**Example:** Do you get on the bus at this corner?  
Yes, I get on the bus at this corner.  
No, I don't get on the bus at this corner.

1. Do they get off the bus at the station?
2. Do we get off the bus at the station?
3. Does the girl get off the bus at the same stop every day?
4. Do they get on the bus at Tenth Street?
5. Does he get on the bus near his home?
6. Do I get on this bus?
7. Do the students get on the bus at First Avenue?



A Telephone Conversation





### Practice the Conversation

Hello.

Hello. Is Joe there?

Joe? There's no Joe here. I'm afraid you have the wrong number.  
Oh. I'm sorry.

Hello.

Hello. Is this Madison 4-1739?

Yes, it is.

May I speak to Joe Anderson?

He isn't downstairs. He's upstairs. Hold the phone. I'll call him.

Thank you.

Hello. Joe's not here. He went out to eat.  
Well, this is Robert Nelson.

May I take a message?

No, don't bother. I'll try again later on.

He'll be back soon.

All right. Thanks a lot. Good-bye.

Good-bye.

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## I. Review of Tense Forms

## a. Review of Present Tense - Present Progressive

The present tense describes an action which takes place every day.  
The present progressive tense describes an action which is going on or continuing now.

Example: John studies every day. John is studying now.

Complete these sentences using the correct form of the present or the present progressive tense.

## 1. learn

I \_\_\_\_\_ English now.

I \_\_\_\_\_ English in class every day.

## 2. study

We \_\_\_\_\_ very hard.

We \_\_\_\_\_ our lesson every night.

## 3. go

They \_\_\_\_\_ to class now.

They \_\_\_\_\_ each morning.

## 4. drink

\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ coffee or tea now?

\_\_\_\_\_ you always \_\_\_\_\_ coffee or tea for breakfast?

## 5. come

\_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ by train or by plane?

\_\_\_\_\_ he usually \_\_\_\_\_ by train or by plane?

## b. Review of the Past Progressive Tense

The past progressive tense describes an action which was continuing at some definite time in the past. We seldom use the past progressive alone. We usually use it with some past action.

Example: I was studying when the telephone rang.

Complete these sentences using the correct form of the past or the past progressive tense.

Example: have - call

Jack was having breakfast when John called him.

## 1. think - come

We \_\_\_\_\_ of going to the movies when you \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2. read - leave

They \_\_\_\_\_ that book when he \_\_\_\_\_.

3. buy - meet  
He \_\_\_\_\_ some new shirts when I \_\_\_\_\_ him.
4. watch - call  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ television when we \_\_\_\_\_?
5. come - talk  
When the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ into the room I \_\_\_\_\_

c. Exercise with Progressive Verb Phrases.

Answer these questions using progressive verb phrases.

1. What were you doing when I called you?
2. What is he doing now?
3. Are they coming by train or by plane?
4. Are you learning English now?
5. Were you studying last night?
6. Are you going tomorrow?

Choose the correct form.

1. When we came in, they (talked, were talking).
2. He (wrote, was writing) a letter when we saw him.
3. He always (prepares, is preparing) his lessons well.
4. It (begins, is beginning) to rain.
5. She (walks, is walking) into the room now.
6. When you left home, was the sun (shine, shining)?

Answer these questions.

1. Was it raining when you got up? <sup>4</sup>
2. Was he driving when the accident happened?
3. What were the students doing when the teacher came in?
4. Were they still sleeping when you left?
5. Who was he talking to when we passed?

## 2. The Future Tense

In modern American English we generally use will plus the simple form of the verb to form the future tense.

Example: I will come tomorrow.  
He will come tomorrow.

<u>Person</u>	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1st	I will go	We will go
2nd	You will go	You will go
3rd	He, she, it will go	They will go

We use contracted forms more than the full forms in conversational English.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
I'll	we'll
you'll	you'll
he'll	they'll
she'll	
it'll	
John'll	

To form the negative, place not after will. To form a question place will before the subject.

Examples: John will leave tomorrow.  
John will not leave tomorrow.  
Will John leave tomorrow?  
What time will John leave tomorrow?

In the negative, the contracted form won't (will not) is the common conversational form for all persons.

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
I won't	We won't
You won't	You won't
He, she won't	They won't
It won't	

a. Form the future tense of the verbs in parentheses: (Use the full form of will.)

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) with us.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ (come) soon.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ (get off) here.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home by plane.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) to the class.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) our lunches.

b. Repeat the preceding exercise, using contracted forms.

c. Change to the negative form: (Use the full form.)

1. He will study tonight.
2. Mary will call us.
3. We will leave for Austin Monday.
4. I will leave next week.
5. They will meet you in the lab.
6. She will bring her books.
7. It will leave on time.
8. Jane will write often.

d. Repeat the exercise above, using contracted forms.

e. Change to the affirmative question form.

1. He will meet us here.
2. They will leave for the next base soon.
3. It will run a long time.
4. The students will go to Mexico.
5. Summer will be hot.
6. Spring will be early.
7. He will order a salad.
8. You will get an answer soon.

Then change the statements in this exercise to negative question form using the contracted form.

Examples: He will meet us here.  
 Won't he meet us here?

### 3. Future Tense - Verb Be

We form the future tense of the verb Be in the same way as we form the future tense of other verbs.

Examples: They will be here at two o'clock.  
 They won't be here at two o'clock.  
 Will they be here at two o'clock?  
 What time will they be here?  
 Won't they be here at two o'clock?

a. Form the future tense of the verb be:

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. John         | here soon.           |
| 2. The student  | in his room.         |
| 3. The students | in their rooms.      |
| 4. Mr. Smith    | our new teacher.     |
| 5. It           | warm this afternoon. |

b. Change the sentences above to the negative form. (Use both full and contracted forms.)

c. Change the sentences above to the affirmative question form.

d. Change the sentences above to the negative question form. (Use the contracted form.)

## 4. Special Expressions which May Express the Future

- a.
- May or might
- + simple forms of the verb = present or future.

Examples:

I may speak with Joe tomorrow.  
I might speak with Joe tomorrow.

He may be upstairs.  
He might be upstairs.

We may get off at the train station.  
We might get off at the train station.

They may not arrive before 7:30.  
They might not arrive before 7:30.

The bus may be too crowded.  
The bus might be too crowded.

- b.
- Expect to, plan to, hope to, want to.

Examples:

He expects to arrive at 8:00.  
We plan to get off at Tenth Street.  
You want to read this book.  
They hope to meet you at the station.

- (1) Exercise: Substitute
- expect to
- and
- plan to
- for
- will
- in each of the following.

Example:

The student will have a book tomorrow.  
The student expects to have a book tomorrow.  
The student plans to have a book tomorrow.

1. I will arrive on the midnight plane from New York.
2. She will be very busy next month.
3. John will call you tomorrow night.
4. The Carters will drive you to the train tonight.

- (2) Use
- hope to
- or
- want to
- in each of the following.

Example:

They may eat in a restaurant this evening.  
They hope to eat in a restaurant this evening.  
They want to eat in a restaurant this evening.

1. The students may finish their homework before 9:00.
2. My father and mother may visit me this winter.
3. We may go to the bank tomorrow.
4. He may get on at the next stop.

(3) Give the Question Form, then the Negative Statement Form for each of the following:

Example:

I plan to study English tonight.

Do I plan to study English tonight?

I don't plan to study English tonight.

1. She wants to ride to work.
2. We expect to get off the train near home.
3. They hope to go to the movies on Saturday.
4. I plan to watch television after dinner.

(4) Give a yes answer, then a no answer to each of the following.

Example:

Do they plan to come by train?

Yes, they plan to come by train.

No, they don't plan to come by train.

1. Do you plan to listen to a tape today?
2. Do they want to go to the concert on Tuesday?
3. Do we expect to learn English quickly?
4. Do you hope to go to town for the holidays?



## TAPE 1201A

Listen to the following conversation.

A: Does this bus go to the train station?

B: No, but I can give you a transfer.

A: Where do I get off?

B: At Tenth Street. I'll let you know.

A: What bus do I get?

B: Take the bus marked Central Station.

A: Will I get there before 7:30?

B: Yes, you'll have plenty of time.

B: We're coming to Tenth Street now.

A: Do I get off here?

B: At the next stop.

A: O. K. Thanks a lot.

B: Not at all!

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen

We will now practice some sentences with the special expressions get on and get off.  
Listen and repeat.

I get on the bus at First Street.

I get off the bus at Tenth Street.

We get on the train in New York.

We get off the train in Chicago.

They get on the streetcar at Fourth Avenue.

They get off the streetcar at Seventh Avenue.

He gets on the plane at 10:00.

He gets off the plane at 1:00.

She gets on the boat in New York.

She gets off the boat in Southampton.

Where do I get on the bus?

At Nineteenth Street.

Where do I get off the bus?

At Thirty-first Street.

You will now hear some sentences and then questions about the sentences. Answer the questions. Then repeat the correct answers.

I get on the bus at First Street.  
Where do I get on the bus?

I get on the bus at First Street.

I get off the bus at Tenth Street.  
Where do I get off the bus?

I get off the bus at Tenth Street.

We get on the train in New York.  
Where do we get on the train?

We get on the train in New York.

We get off the train in Chicago.  
Where do we get off the train?

We get off the train in Chicago.

She gets on the boat in New York.  
Where does she get on the boat?

She gets on the boat in New York.

She gets off the boat in Southampton.  
Where does she get off the boat?

She gets off the boat in Southampton.

Now let's practice some questions and answers. Repeat these questions and answers.

I took the bus to school.  
Did I take the bus to school?  
Yes, I did.  
No, I didn't.

You rode the bus yesterday.  
Did you ride the bus yesterday?  
Yes, you did.  
No, you didn't.

The bus drivers helped the passengers.  
Did the bus drivers help the passengers?  
Yes, they did.  
No, they didn't.

We knew the streets in the city.  
Did we know the streets in the city?  
Yes, we did.  
No, we didn't.

The people got on the bus at First Street.  
Did the people get on the bus at First Street?  
Yes, they did.  
No, they didn't.

The student got off the bus at school.  
Did the student get off the bus at school?  
Yes, he did.  
No, he didn't.

Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Are you riding the bus to town?  
Yes, I am.

Were you riding the bus to town?  
Yes, I was.

Is this bus going to the train station?  
No, it isn't.

Was this bus going to the train station?  
No, it wasn't.

Are we driving a bus?  
No, we aren't.

Were we driving a bus?  
No, we weren't.

Is your friend taking the train to Chicago?  
Yes, he is.

Was your friend taking the train to Chicago?  
Yes, he was.

Are your parents living here now?  
Yes, they are.

Were they living here last year?  
No, they weren't.

Listen and repeat these sentences.

He rides the bus every day.  
He takes the bus every day.  
He gets the bus every day.

The bus is crowded.  
The train is crowded.  
The streets are crowded.

The people are in the city.  
The buses are in the city.  
The streets are in the city.

The home is on the street.  
 The home is in the city.  
 The streets have many homes.  
 The city has many homes.

We know the people.  
 He knows the streets.

The driver gives good service.  
 The buses give good service.

The seat is on the bus.  
 The seats are on the bus.  
 The passenger needs a seat.

Listen to the following statements. Then change the statements to questions.  
 Repeat the correct response.

Example: The driver hopes to give good service.  
 Does the driver hope to give good service?  
 Does the driver hope to give good service?

The bus will be crowded.

Will the bus be crowded?

The passenger hopes to find a seat.

Does the passenger hope to find a seat?

We expect to give good service.

Do we expect to give good service?

They want to go to the city today.

Do they want to go to the city today?

The passenger needs a transfer.

Does the passenger need a transfer?

You plan to take the train to Chicago.

Do you plan to take the train to Chicago?

Your home is on this street.

Is your home on this street?

She gets on the boat in New York.

Does she get on the boat in New York?

She gets off the boat in London.

Does she get off the boat in London?

We are flying to Chicago.

Are we flying to Chicago?

Listen to these sentences and repeat them.

I ride the bus to town.  
I am riding the bus to town.  
I rode the bus to town.  
I was riding the bus to town.  
I will ride the bus to town.

You get off the train here.  
You are getting off the train here.  
You got off the train here.  
You were getting off the train here.  
You will get off the train here.

We get on the boat in New York.  
We are getting on the boat in New York.  
We got on the boat in New York.  
We were getting on the boat in New York.  
We will get on the boat in New York.

His parents live on this street.  
His parents are living on this street.  
His parents lived on this street.  
His parents were living on this street.  
His parents will live on this street.

The students expect to stay here.  
The students are expecting to stay here.  
The students expected to stay here.  
The students were expecting to stay here.  
The students will expect to stay here.

John comes home from work early.  
John is coming home from work.  
John came home from work.  
John was coming home from work.  
John will come home from work.

## TAPÉ 1201B

Listen to this telephone conversation.

A: Hello.

B: Hello. Is Joe there?

A: Joe? There's no Joe here.  
I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

B: Oh, I'm sorry.

A: Hello.

B: Hello. Is this Madison 4-1739?

A: Yes, it is.

B: May I speak to Joe Anderson?

A: He isn't downstairs.

He's upstairs.

Hold the phone.

I'll call him.

A: Hello? Joe's not here.

He went out to eat.

B: Well, this is Robert Nelson.

A: May I take a message?

B: No, don't bother.

I'll try again later on.

A: He might be back soon.

B: All right. Thanks a lot. Good-bye.

A: Good-bye.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to these words and expressions and repeat them.

number

telephone number

home telephone number

What is Joe's home telephone number?

message

take a message

May I take a message?

hold

hold the phone

Please hold the phone.

wrong

wrong number

I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

bother  
bother me  
don't bother me  
Please don't bother me.

eat  
eat dinner  
time to eat dinner  
It's time to eat dinner.

upstairs  
downstairs  
live upstairs or downstairs  
Does he live upstairs or downstairs?

be back  
might be back  
He might be back soon.

You will now hear some statements. After each statement there is a question.  
Answer the questions and repeat the correct answers.

His telephone number is 7-8838.  
What is his telephone number?

His telephone number is 7-8838.

They have the right number.  
Do they have the right number?

Yes, they have the right number.

He will call Joe later.  
When will he call Joe?

He will call Joe later.

Joe lives upstairs.  
Where does Joe live?

Joe lives upstairs.

John will be back soon.  
When will John be back?

John will be back soon.

She is eating her breakfast.  
What is she doing?  
She is eating her breakfast.

Now let's practice some questions and answers Listen to them and repeat them.

I will call you tomorrow.  
 Will you call me tomorrow?  
 Yes, I will.  
 No, I won't.

We will get your telephone number.  
 Will we get your telephone number?  
 Yes, you will.  
 No, you won't.

John and Mary will go to school.  
 Will John and Mary go to school?  
 Yes, they will.  
 No, they won't.

Robert will leave a message for me.  
 Will Robert leave a message for me?  
 Yes, he will.  
 No, he won't.

You will hold the phone.  
 Will you hold the phone?  
 Yes, I will.  
 No, I won't.

All students will study English.  
 Will all students study English?  
 Yes, they will.  
 No, they won't.

Listen to the following questions. Give the correct affirmative answers to the questions. Then repeat the correct answers.

Does Mr. Smith call the office every day?  
 Yes, he calls the office every day.  
 Yes, he calls the office every day.

Does Mr. Cole take the bus in the morning?

Yes, Mr. Cole takes the bus in the morning.

Does he get a seat every day?

Yes, he gets a seat every day.

Does he go to the train station?

Yes, he goes to the train station.



Are there many people in the station?

Yes, there are many people in the station.

Are there many trains?

Yes, there are many trains.

Is Mr. Brown on the train?

Yes, Mr. Brown is on the train.

Does she often speak to you?

Yes, she often speaks to you.

Do you usually get the right number?

Yes, you usually get the right number.

Do the students walk to school?

Yes, the students walk to school.

Are they studying English tonight?

Yes, they are studying English tonight.

Listen to the following statements. Then change them to questions. Repeat the correct response.

Example:    The students intend to walk to the post office.  
              Do the students intend to walk to the post office?  
              Do the students intend to walk to the post office?

We intend to study tonight.

Do we intend to study tonight?

I plan to buy a car.

Do I plan to buy a car?

They hope to meet us at the movies.

Do they hope to meet us at the movies?

Your friends hope to arrive soon.

Do your friends hope to arrive soon?

I take a break between classes.

Do I take a break between classes?

John often gets a wrong number.

Does John often get a wrong number?

Joe calls Mary in the evening.

Does Joe call Mary in the evening?

The students go out to eat.

Do the students go out to eat?

We plan to live upstairs.

Do we plan to live upstairs?

You often call me at home.

Do you often call me at home?

Now let's practice some negative statements and questions. Listen and then repeat.

He doesn't call me during the day.

He didn't call me during the day.

Doesn't he call me during the day?

Didn't he call me during the day?

I don't want to read that book.

I didn't want to read that book.

Don't I want to read that book?

Didn't I want to read that book?

We don't expect to see you there.

We didn't expect to see you there.

Don't we expect to see you there?

Didn't we expect to see you there?

They don't plan to go to San Francisco.

They didn't plan to go to San Francisco.

Don't they plan to go to San Francisco?

Didn't they plan to go to San Francisco?

I don't always get a wrong number.

Don't I always get a wrong number?

I didn't always get a wrong number.

Didn't I always get a wrong number?

Robert never arrives on time.

Robert didn't arrive on time.

Doesn't Robert ever arrive on time?

Didn't Robert arrive on time?

## TAPE 1201C

Listen to the following conversation between two students during the break.

A: How much time will we have between classes?

B: We'll have ten minutes before the next class.

A: Do you want to smoke a cigarette?

B: No, I'll just get a cup of coffee.

A: Shall we go outside for a few minutes?

B: No, I expect to meet a friend here.

A: Well, it will soon be time for class.

Will you go with me?

B: No, I'll wait a little longer.

A: Will you be late for class?

B: I hope to get there on time.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to these words and expressions and repeat them.

want to

want to smoke

Do you want to smoke a cigarette?

just

just get

I'll just get a cup of coffee.

time

how much time

How much time will we have?

outside

go outside

We'll go outside now.

time

soon be time

It will soon be time for class.

longer

a little longer

I'll wait a little longer.

Listen to the following sentences. Then change them to the future and repeat the correct responses.

Examples:

This bus goes to the train station.  
 This bus will go to the train station.  
 This bus will go to the train station.

Does this bus go to the train station?  
 Will this bus go to the train station?  
 Will this bus go to the train station?

I get off at Tenth Street.

I will get off at Tenth Street.

We arrive before 7:30.

We will arrive before 7:30.

Joe lives in this house.

Joe will live in this house.

The students always come to class.

The students will come to class.

Do we have a holiday next week?

Will we have a holiday next week?

Are you studying your English lesson?

Will you study your English lesson?

Now substitute may for will in the following sentences and then repeat the correct responses.

Example:

I will call you tomorrow.  
 I may call you tomorrow.  
 I may call you tomorrow.

They will eat in a restaurant.

They may eat in a restaurant.

The students will finish their

The students may finish their homework.

We will have a holiday next week.

We may have a holiday next week.

I will live in Washington next year.

I may live in Washington next year.

You will take the bus to the station.

You may take the bus to the station.

Substitute expect to for will in the following sentences and repeat the correct responses.

Example:

They will answer your letter tomorrow.

They expect to answer your letter tomorrow.

They expect to answer your letter tomorrow.

I will arrive on the plane from New York.

I expect to arrive on the plane from New York.

She will be busy next month.

She expects to be busy next month.

John will call you on Sunday.

John expects to call you on Sunday.

The Carters will drive to the station.

The Carters expect to drive to the station.

We will get to class on time.

We expect to get to class on time.

Substitute plan to for will in the following sentences. Then repeat the correct responses.

Example:

I will take the bus to town on Saturday.  
 I plan to take the bus to town on Saturday.  
 I plan to take the bus to town on Saturday.

We will arrive on the plane from New York.

We plan to arrive on the plane from New York.

They will get off the bus at Main Street.

They plan to get off the bus at Main Street.

She will visit us next month.

She plans to visit us next month.

The Browns will live in Chicago next year.

The Browns plan to live in Chicago next year.

He will take a break between classes.

He plans to take a break between classes.

Substitute hope to for will in the following sentences. Then repeat the correct answers.

Example:

They will eat in a restaurant this evening.  
 They hope to eat in a restaurant this evening.  
 They hope to eat in a restaurant this evening.

The students will finish before 9:00.

The students hope to finish before 9:00.

My father and mother will visit me.

My father and mother hope to visit me.

We will have a holiday next Friday.

We hope to have a holiday next Friday.

Robert will speak to you tomorrow.

Robert hopes to speak to you tomorrow.

They will go to Chicago on the train.

They hope to go to Chicago on the train.

Substitute want to for will in each of the following sentences. Then repeat the correct responses.

Example:

They will eat in a restaurant this evening.  
They want to eat in a restaurant this evening.  
They want to eat in a restaurant this evening.

We will go outside for a few minutes.

We want to go outside for a few minutes.

I will drink a cup of coffee.

I want to drink a cup of coffee.

They will meet some friends here.

They plan to meet some friends here.

You will study English every evening.

You plan to study English every evening.

John will arrive by plane from Washington.

John plans to arrive by plane from Washington.

## SOUND AND INTONATION

Notice the intonation pattern we use when we speak to another person.

Listen and repeat.

Good morning, Mr. Smith.  
 How are you, Mr. Jones?  
 Joe, did you call a cab?  
 Did you call a cab, Joe?  
 Good-bye, Miss Smith.  
 Good-bye, Mrs. Black.

## Voiced and Voiceless th

Listen.

Let's practice the voiced and voiceless th.  
 teeth.

Then: To form / ð / let the vocal organs vibrate.  
 To form / θ / blow.

Listen and repeat.

/ ð /	/ ð /	/ ð /
that	that	that

/ θ /	/ θ /	/ θ /
north	north	north

Listen.

Some very important English words begin with the voiced / ð / sound.

Listen and repeat.

the	they	then
this	them	than
that	their	though
these	theirs	therefore
those	there	



Now practice the voiceless /θ/ sound in these words.

Listen and repeat.

think  
thought  
thanks  
thirty

thirteen  
third  
thousand  
thing

month  
north  
south

## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

## Special Expressions

By bus  
By car  
By plane  
By taxi  
Shall I  
Shall we

## Adverbs

Of Frequency  
often, usually, always, ever, never

Uses of never, ever

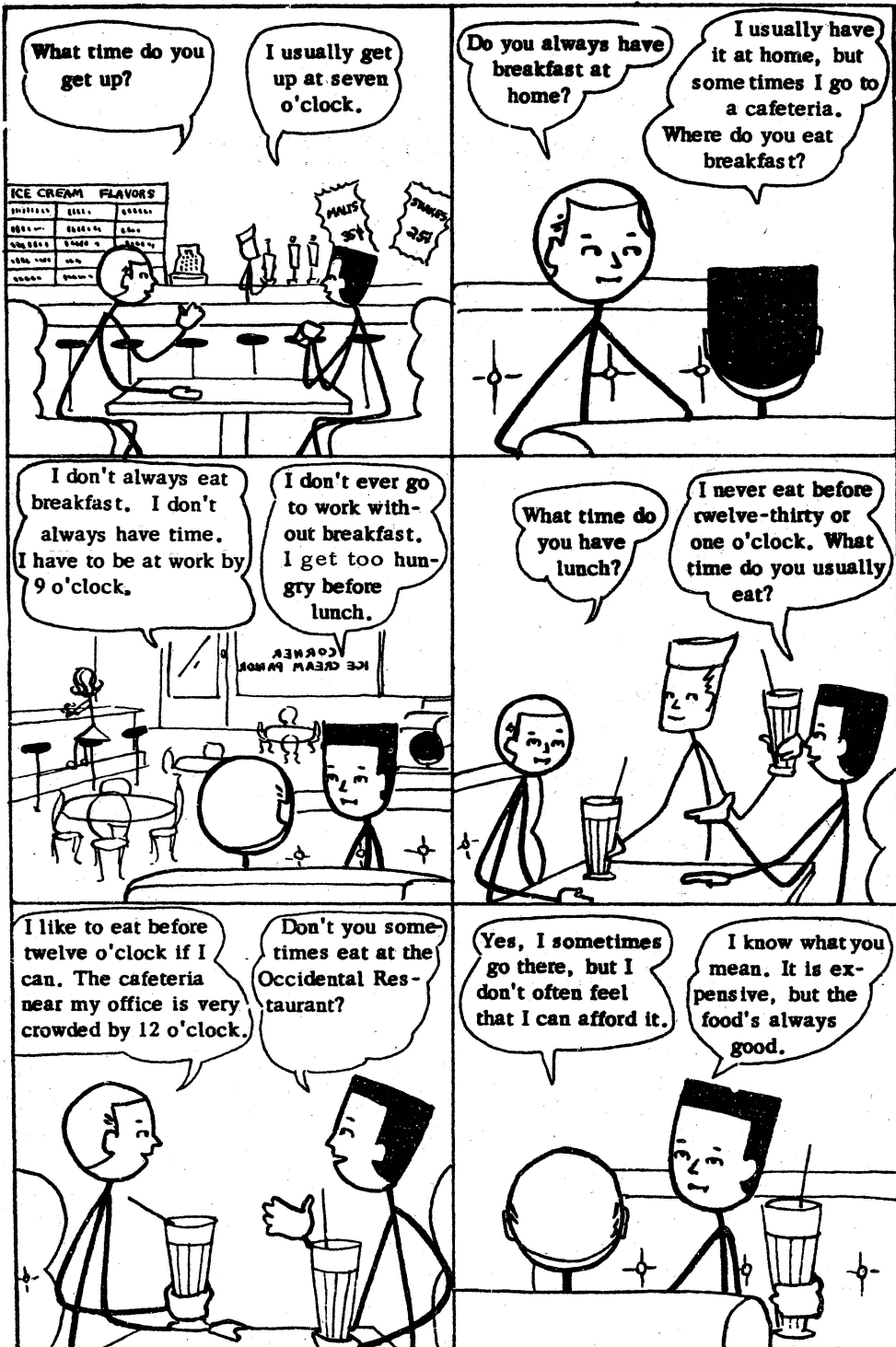
Uses of still, already, yet

Sound and Intonation

## Stress on Adverbs

/1/

Conversation About Eating



## UNIT 1202

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

Dialog

A: What time do you get up?

B: I usually get up at seven o'clock.

A: Do you always have breakfast at home?

B: I usually have it at home, but sometimes I go to a cafeteria. Where do you eat breakfast?

A: I don't always eat breakfast. I don't always have time. I have to be at work by 9 o'clock.

B: I don't ever go to work without breakfast. I get too hungry before lunch.

A: What time do you have lunch?

B: I never eat before twelve-thirty or one o'clock. What time do you usually eat?

A: I like to eat before twelve o'clock if I can. The cafeteria near my office is very crowded by 12 o'clock.

B: Don't you sometimes eat at the Occidental Restaurant?

A: Yes, I sometimes go there, but I don't often feel that I can afford it.

B: I know what you mean. It is expensive, but the food's always good.

Reading

I get up about seven o'clock. I take a bath, dress, and have breakfast. I usually have orange juice, bacon and eggs, toast, and coffee for breakfast. If I have time, I read the paper after breakfast. Then I go to work. Sometimes I drive my car to work, and sometimes I take the bus. I live too far from work to walk there. I always get to work by nine o'clock.

I am lucky because I enjoy my work. The morning goes by quickly. I usually eat lunch with some people who work with me. We usually eat in a cafeteria near the office. Sometimes we go to a restaurant. We have an hour for lunch, and then we go back to work. We work until five o'clock.

At five o'clock I go home. It takes me about half an hour to get home from the office. When I get home, I have dinner. After dinner, I read, watch television, write letters, or go to a movie. I usually go to bed about eleven o'clock.

Words and Phrases

takes a bath

dress

bacon

eggs

toast

lucky

enjoy

cafeteria

watch

orange juice

it takes (me)

Pattern Practice

For study and drill.

1. get up  
 I get up at 7:00 o'clock.  
 He gets up at 8:00 o'clock.  
 I usually get up at 7:30.  
 He usually gets up at 8:30.
  
2. orange juice, toast, and coffee  
 They have orange juice, toast, and coffee  
 They have orange juice, toast, and coffee for breakfast.
  
3. bacon and eggs  
 He has bacon and eggs.  
 He has bacon and eggs for breakfast.  
 He usually has bacon and eggs for breakfast.  
 He usually had bacon and eggs for breakfast.  
 He'll usually have bacon and eggs for breakfast.
  
4. We go to work.  
 We go to work after breakfast.  
 He goes to work.  
 He always goes to work.
  
5. You drive your car.  
 You sometimes drive your car.  
 He always drives his car.  
 Does he drive his car?  
 He doesn't always drive his car.
  
6. I take the bus.  
 He takes the bus.  
 I usually take the bus.  
 Does he ever take the bus?  
 He never takes the bus.  
 He took the bus.
  
7. by 9:00 o'clock  
 You get to work by 9:00 o'clock.  
 He gets to work by 9:00 o'clock.  
 Do you always get to work by 9:00?  
 Doesn't she always get to work by 9:00?  
 He'll get to work by 9:00 o'clock.
  
8. We usually eat lunch.  
 We usually eat lunch at a cafeteria.  
 We sometimes eat lunch at a restaurant.  
 We don't usually eat lunch at home.  
 We didn't usually eat lunch at home.

9. It takes about an hour.  
 It takes about 20 minutes to go downtown  
 It takes about half an hour to get home.  
 Does it take you an hour to get home?  
 Will it take you an hour to get home?
10. I have dinner.  
 I usually have dinner at 6:00 o'clock.  
 I often have dinner at a restaurant.  
 He sometimes has dinner at 7:00 o'clock.
11. We work until 5:00 o'clock.  
 We watch television until 10:00 o'clock.  
 He sometimes watches television until 11:00 o'clock.
12. We go to bed at 11:00 o'clock.  
 We usually go to bed at 11:00 o'clock.  
 Does he ever go to bed at 11:00 o'clock?  
 He always goes to bed at 11:00 o'clock.  
 She never went to bed at 11:00 o'clock.

### Vocabulary Practice

1. take a bath  
 I take a bath before I go to work.  
 He takes a bath every day.  
 Does she take a bath every morning?
2. dress  
 I dress about 7:30.  
 Do you dress before breakfast?  
 Does he dress after breakfast?
3. breakfast  
 I have breakfast at 7:30.  
 What time do you have breakfast?  
 What do you like to have for breakfast?
4. bacon  
 Do you like bacon for breakfast?  
 Yes, I like two slices of bacon.  
 Have some bacon.
5. eggs  
 I sometimes have an egg for breakfast.  
 Do you have one or two eggs for breakfast?  
 He always has eggs and bacon for breakfast.
6. toast  
 I always have toast for breakfast.  
 Do you want some toast?  
 I'd like two eggs, two slices of bacon, and some toast.

7. coffee  
Most Americans drink coffee.  
They usually have coffee for breakfast.  
Do you want some coffee?  
Does he want a cup of coffee?
8. drive  
I usually drive to work.  
Do you like to drive?  
He always drives home.  
Doesn't he always drive to work?
9. lucky  
I'm always lucky.  
He's a lucky man.  
That lucky girl gets the prize.  
That lucky girl got the prize.
10. enjoy  
I enjoy my work.  
Does he enjoy television?  
He doesn't enjoy television, but he does enjoy movies.
11. cafeteria  
I have breakfast in a cafeteria.  
Does he ever eat in a cafeteria?  
He eats in a cafeteria near his office.
12. restaurant  
They never have breakfast in a restaurant.  
We often have dinner at this restaurant.  
Restaurants are usually more expensive than cafeterias.
13. lunch  
Where do you have lunch?  
I usually have lunch at a cafeteria.  
Don't you sometimes have lunch at a restaurant?  
They often have lunch at home.
14. dinner  
What do you want for dinner?  
Do they usually have dinner at home?  
Sometimes they have dinner at a restaurant.
15. watch  
Do you ever watch television?  
He usually watches television in the evening.  
Watch for cars when you're crossing the street.
16. television  
Do you like television?  
This is his favorite television program.  
We never watch television in the morning.
17. orange juice  
Do you always have orange juice for breakfast?  
I'd like a glass of orange juice.  
He just has orange juice and coffee for breakfast.

Word Study

Review: Present tense forms of verbs with adverbs of frequency.

1. I usually get up about 7:00 o'clock.
2. I don't usually sleep late.
3. I take a bath and dress before breakfast.
4. We always have breakfast at home.
5. We often have orange juice, toast, and coffee for breakfast.
6. We never have tea.
7. We sometimes have bacon and eggs.
8. We're sometimes late for work.
9. You're sometimes late for class.
10. I'm usually early for class.



Calling a Cab



Conversation

- A: Yellow Cab Company.  
 B: I need a cab at 4523 Broad Street.
- A: Is that a private home?  
 B: No, it's an apartment house.
- A: Your name and apartment number?  
 B: Joseph Mitchell, apartment 214.
- A: We'll send a cab right away.  
 B: Please hurry. I'm late.
- A: The cab will be there in ten minutes.  
 B: Thanks a lot..

Special Expressions

By bus	By car	By cab
By train	By taxi	By plane

1. I usually go to work by bus.
2. John often goes to school by cab.
3. Mr. Black never goes downtown by car.
4. Miss Roberts always goes to New York by train.
5. We usually go to Chicago by plane.
6. Do you like to travel by plane?
7. No, I don't. I like to travel by train.

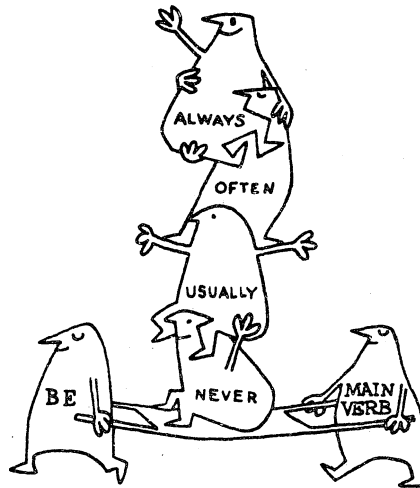
Review Practice

1. We went to school yesterday.
2. Did you go to school yesterday?
3. No, I didn't. I went downtown yesterday.
4. I studied my lesson last night.
5. Did you study your lesson last night?
6. No, I didn't. I had a party last night.
7. John worked in New York last year.
8. Did Mary work in New York last year?
9. No, she didn't. She worked in Chicago last year.
10. My friends came at twelve o'clock.
11. Did your friends come at twelve o'clock?
12. No they didn't. They came at eleven o'clock.

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## 1. Adverbs of Frequency

always, often,  
usually, ever,  
never, etc.



## a. Practice this conversation.

Mr. Edwards: Hello, Miss Abbott. How are you?  
Do you always eat here in the cafeteria?

Miss Abbott: Oh, hello, Mr. Edwards. I'm fine, thank you.  
No, I don't always eat here; I often have lunch at a restaurant  
on the highway. The cafeteria is usually crowded at noon.

Mr. Edwards: Yes, that's right. It's usually busy at noon, and it always  
closes early. I never eat here at night. Do you often have  
your coffee break here?

Miss Abbott: Yes, I usually do. I'm always at the table in the corner.

Notice that adverbs such as always, often, usually, and never come before the main verb and after Be.

Example: I often have lunch at a restaurant.  
The cafeteria is usually busy at noon.

b. Repeat

( 1)	Are the lessons	usually	easy?
( 2)	Am I	often	in school?
( 3)	Are you	ever	here?
( 4)	Are they	always	in class?
( 5)	The breakfast isn't	always	big.
( 6)	The lessons aren't	usually	easy.
( 7)	I'm not	often	late.
( 8)	You aren't	ever	here.
( 9)	The food isn't	always	good.
(10)	The newspaper is	always	big.
(11)	The lessons are	usually	easy.
(12)	I am	often	in school
(13)	You are	never	here.
(14)	They are	always	in class.
(15)	Is the newspaper	always	big?

c. Place the adverb in the correct position.

- (1) (often) I eat at twelve-thirty.
- (2) (always) John goes downtown in a cab.
- (3) (usually) Are the students in an apartment house?
- (4) (often) Is the cab late?
- (5) (always) Do those people work in the afternoon?  
Do those people \_\_\_\_\_ work in the afternoon?
- (6) (usually) Does Mr. Hilton teach English?  
Does Mr. Hilton \_\_\_\_\_ teach English?
- (7) (ever) Does your friend call the wrong number?  
Does your friend \_\_\_\_\_ call the wrong number?
- (8) (always) I don't understand the lesson.  
I don't \_\_\_\_\_ understand the lesson.
- (9) (ever) Mr. and Mrs. Burns don't ride the bus.  
Mr. and Mrs. Burns don't \_\_\_\_\_ ride the bus.

d. Ever and Never

Ever = affirmative form of adverb

Never = negative form of adverb

NOTE: In English, only one negative is possible in a statement or question.

I don't . . . . . ride the bus.

don't = do not (negative)  
Statement is already negative.Therefore, affirmative adverb ever  
must be used.

I . . . . . ride the bus.

Statement is affirmative.

Statement + negative adverb  
Never = negative statement.(1) Practice using ever, never.Example: I never study in the morning.  
I don't ever study in the morning.

- a. You \_\_\_\_\_ work hard.  
You \_\_\_\_\_ work hard.
- b. They \_\_\_\_\_ take a cab.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ take a cab.
- c. John and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ walk to school.  
John and Mary \_\_\_\_\_ walk to school.
- d. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ reads the lesson.  
My friend \_\_\_\_\_ reads the lesson.

## (2) Rewrite the following sentences. Use the words usually, often, etc

Example: (never) I have orange juice.  
I never have orange juice.

- a. (usually) She goes to work at eight o'clock.
- b. (often) We have lunch at the cafeteria.
- c. (ever) Do you take the bus?
- d. (sometimes) They go to bed by 10 o'clock.
- e. (always) We have toast with our coffee.
- f. (ever) Do you study in the evening?
- g. (usually) Paul doesn't work at night.
- h. (often) We don't eat in a restaurant.
- i. (ever) They aren't in class on Sunday.

(3) Answer the following questions using the adverb indicated.

Example: Do they ever ride the bus? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. (often)  
Yes, they often ride the bus.

- a. Is he ever at home in the morning? No, \_\_\_\_\_. (never)
- b. Does the student ever study in his room? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. (usually)
- c. Are the buses ever empty? No, \_\_\_\_\_. (never)
- d. Is the bank always open? No, \_\_\_\_\_. (always)
- e. Does the teacher often give the answer? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. (usually)
- f. Do the students usually know the answers? No, \_\_\_\_\_. (usually)
- g. Are the waitresses always busy? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. (always)

2. Adverbs - Still, already, yet.

We use already and still in affirmative statements and in questions. They usually come before the main verb and after Be.

We use yet in questions and in negative statements. It comes at the end of the sentence.

a. STILL

- (1) He studied English last year, and he is still studying it.
- (2) Does he still like bacon and eggs?
- (3) She is still waiting.
- (4) Don't they still live here?

b. ALREADY - YET

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| (1) Do you already know some English?  | (5) He isn't here yet.            |
| (2) Yes, we already know some English. | (6) Are they up yet?              |
| (3) Yes, we know some English already. | (7) Is the cafeteria crowded yet? |
| (4) Is he watching TV already?         | (8) The cab isn't here yet.       |

3. Special Expressions in polite inquiries and requests.

SHALL I . . . .

SHALL WE . . . ?

Study these sentences.

- a. Shall I call the cab for you?
- b. Shall I wait here?
- c. When shall we meet you?
- d. Where shall we go?
- e. How long shall I wait for you?
- f. Shall I mail it for you?
- g. Shall we come at ten o'clock?

## TAPE 1202A

Listen to the following conversation.

A: What time do you usually get up?

B: I usually get up at six o'clock.

A: Do you always eat breakfast?

B: No, I don't always.

A: Do you sometimes eat in a restaurant?

B: Yes, I often eat at a restaurant.

A: Where do you sometimes eat?

B: I sometimes eat at the Occidental Restaurant.

A: Is the cafeteria often crowded?

B: It is always crowded between 11 and 12 o'clock.

A: Do you often go early?

B: I always go at 11:30.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

We will now practice some sentences with special expressions: may, might.  
Listen and repeat.

I may get up at 6 o'clock tomorrow.  
I might get up at 6 o'clock tomorrow.

We may eat breakfast at 7 o'clock.  
We might eat breakfast at 7 o'clock.

We may have bacon and eggs.  
We might have bacon and eggs.

We may eat breakfast in a cafeteria.  
We might eat breakfast in a cafeteria.

We may go to work by car.  
We might go to work by car.

You may like to travel by train.  
You might like to travel by train.

We may enjoy breakfast downtown.  
We might enjoy breakfast downtown.

I may drive to work today.  
I might drive to work today.

They may watch television tonight.  
They might watch television tonight.

They may enjoy the movies.  
They might enjoy the movies.

You will now hear some sentences and then questions about the sentences.

Answer the questions and repeat the correct responses.

Example: I usually go to work by bus.  
 How do I usually go to work?  
 I usually go to work by bus.  
 I usually go to work by bus.

She always goes to New York by train.  
 How does she always go to New York?

She always goes to New York by train.

We frequently go to the movies by cab.  
 How do we frequently go to the movies?

We frequently go to the movies by cab.

He often travels by plane.  
 How does he often travel?

He often travels by plane.

I never travel by boat.  
 Do you ever travel by boat?

I never travel by boat.

They often come here by car.  
 How do they often come here?

They often come here by car.

Now let's practice some questions and answers. Listen and repeat.

We'll send a cab at once.  
 Will you send a cab at once?  
 Yes, we will.  
 No, we won't.

He'll get off the bus at the corner.  
 Will he get off the bus at the corner?  
 Yes, he will.  
 No, he won't.

She'll get up at 6 o'clock.  
 Will she get up at 6 o'clock?  
 Yes, she will.  
 No, she won't.



They'll get on the plane in Washington.  
 Will they get on the plane in Washington?  
 Yes, they will.  
 No, they won't.

You'll always study the lesson.  
 Will you always study the lesson?  
 Yes, we will.  
 No, we won't.

We will often go to the movies by bus.  
 Will we often go to the movies by bus?  
 Yes, we will.  
 No, we won't.

Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Do you always drink coffee in the morning?  
 Yes, we do.  
 No, we don't.

Does he frequently go to work by cab?  
 Yes, he does.  
 No, he doesn't.

Do we often get up at 6 o'clock?  
 Yes, we do.  
 No, we don't.

Do they usually work until 5 o'clock?  
 Yes, they do.  
 No, they don't.

Does she ever get off at this corner?  
 Yes, she does.  
 No, she doesn't.

Here are some questions using shall. Listen to them and repeat.

Shall we go to the movies?

Where shall we go tonight?

Shall I open the window?

Shall we practice reading now?

When shall we go downtown?

What shall we do now?

Shall we meet here at 6:00 o'clock?

Shall I call the cab for you?

Now let's practice some sentences using already and yet.  
Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Do you already know English?

Yes, I already know English.

No, I don't know English yet.

Are the students here yet?

Yes, the students are already here.

No, they aren't here yet.

Are you already drinking coffee?

Yes, I'm already drinking coffee.

No, I'm not drinking coffee yet.

Is the movie already crowded?

Yes, it's already crowded.

No, it isn't crowded yet.

Is he speaking English yet?

Yes, he's already speaking English.

No, he's not speaking English yet.

Do you already know the lesson?

Yes, I already know the lesson.

No, I don't know the lesson yet.

John already knows the lesson.

Who already knows the lesson?

Does John know the lesson yet?

What does John already know?

John already knows the lesson.

He doesn't know the dialog yet.

This is an exercise using questions and answers. Listen and repeat both questions and answers.

Do you expect to speak English?

Yes, we expect to.

No, we don't expect to.

Does he plan to go to Chicago by plane?

Yes, he plans to.

No, he doesn't plan to.

Do you hope to have a long holiday?

Yes, we hope to.

No, we don't hope to.

Does Alice want to watch television?

Yes, she wants to.

No, she doesn't want to.

Did James expect to study so long?

Yes, he expected to.

No, he didn't expect to.

## TAPE 1202B

Listen to the following telephone conversation.

- A: Yellow Cab Company.  
B: I need a cab at 4523 Broad Street.  
A: Is that a private home?  
B: No, it's an apartment house.  
A: Your name and apartment number?  
B: Joseph Mitchell, apartment 214.  
A: We'll send a cab right away.  
B: Please hurry. I'm late.  
A: The cab will be there in ten minutes.  
B: Thanks a lot.

Listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to the following conversation and repeat it.

- A: I'm late today.  
B: Yes, you seldom get up so late.  
A: Do you expect to call a cab?  
B: Yes, I plan to go to work by cab.  
A: Shall I call one for you?  
B: Yes, please do.  
A: It'll be here soon.  
B: Do you plan to eat dinner downtown?  
A: Yes, I expect to. Here's the cab.  
B: See you later.  
A: Bye for now.

Here are some sentences using frequency adverbs. Listen to them and repeat.

John seldom goes to work by taxi.  
He usually goes to work by bus.

He usually eats lunch in the cafeteria.  
It is often crowded.

We always go to church by car.  
We sometimes take long trips by plane.

The taxi always arrives quickly.  
The service is usually good.

Do you ever go to the movies by taxi?  
No, I don't ever go by cab.

I never take a trip by taxi.  
We frequently go by car.

What time do you usually get up?  
I usually get up at five.

Do you eat breakfast in a cafeteria?  
I usually eat breakfast at home.

What time do you go to work?  
I always go to work at seven-thirty.

Do you ever go to work without breakfast?  
No, I never go to work without breakfast.

Are you ever late?  
Yes, I'm sometimes late.

Are you ever hungry before lunch?  
Yes, I'm often hungry before lunch.

When do you have lunch?  
I usually eat at 11:30.

Is the cafeteria crowded?  
No, it's never crowded at this time.

Let's practice some questions and answers in the future tense. Repeat.

We will have bacon and eggs for breakfast.  
Will you have bacon and eggs for breakfast?  
Yes, we will.  
No, we won't.

There will be toast and coffee with breakfast.  
Will there be toast and coffee with breakfast?  
Yes, there will.  
No, there won't.

We will take a bus to the cafeteria.  
Will we take a bus to the cafeteria?  
Yes, we will.  
No, we won't.

They will go to the zoo today.  
Will they go to the zoo today?  
Yes, they will.  
No, they won't.

The trip will take 20 minutes.  
Will it take 20 minutes?  
Yes, it will.  
No, it won't.

Notice the verb phrases in these sentences. Listen to them and repeat.

We're listening to a tape now.  
We listen to tapes everyday.

We're going to lab now.  
We go to lab everyday.

He's studying English now.  
He studies English everyday.

Are they eating lunch in a cafeteria now?  
Do they always eat lunch in a cafeteria?

Is she going to town by bus?  
Does she often go to town by bus?

Is he waiting for you at the restaurant now?  
Does he usually wait for you at the restaurant?

I'm not driving to work today.  
I never drive to work.

Jane isn't watching television now.  
Jane never watches television.

We're not sleeping now.  
We never sleep during the day.

The boy isn't getting off the bus now.  
The boy never gets off the bus here.

You will now hear some statements and questions. Answer the questions and repeat the correct responses.

Example: We want to go to town with you.  
Who wants to go to town with me?  
We want to go to town with you.  
We want to go to town with you.

Jimmie expects to wait at the train station.  
Who expects to wait at the train station?

Jimmie expects to wait at the train station.

We plan to go to Chicago soon.  
Who plans to go to Chicago soon?

We plan to go to Chicago soon.

The boys hope to travel by plane.  
Who hopes to travel by plane?

The boys hope to travel by plane.

They want to get on a plane for home.  
Who wants to get on a plane for home?

They want to get on a plane for home.

Here are some questions and answers using want to, plan to, expect to, and hope to.  
Listen and repeat.

What do you want to do?  
I want to go home.

What do you expect to do?  
We expect to work hard.

What do you plan to do?  
I plan to study English.

What do you hope to do?  
We hope to learn English.

What do you want to do?  
We want to go home again.

When do you want to get up?  
We want to get up at six.

When do you plan to get on the plane?  
We plan to get on at seven.

When do you hope to get off the plane?  
We hope to get off at noon.

Where do you expect to go?  
We expect to go downtown.

When do you want to take a bath?  
We want to take a bath now.

Listen to these questions and answers in the present and past tenses and then repeat.

How often do you go to town?  
I go to town three times a week.

When do you visit your friends?  
I visit them on Sundays.

Do you often eat dinner with them?  
Yes, I eat dinner there every Sunday.

What do you do after dinner?  
We often take a drive.

Do you enjoy it?

Yes, I enjoy it very much.

You are very lucky.

Yes, I'm a lucky man.

Did you take a bath?

Yes, I took a bath.

Did she have coffee and toast?

Yes, she had coffee and toast.

Did he eat bacon and eggs?

Yes, he ate bacon and eggs.

Did John call a cab?

Yes, he called a cab.

Did he give the apartment number?

Yes, he gave the apartment number.

Did they send the cab right away?

Yes, they sent it right away.

Did he go to work early?

Yes, he went to work early.

## TAPE 1202C

Listen to this conversation and repeat it.

Look out! Watch that curve ahead!

Boy, I almost missed it.

Slow down, don't drive so fast!

I didn't see a warning sign.

But I'll slow down.

Be careful!

Don't put on the brakes so fast.

The car might turn over.

Note the use of the words always, usually, often, ever, and never in the following sentences. Listen and repeat.

Do you always eat here?

Yes, I always eat here.

No, I don't always eat here.

Do you ever get thirsty?

Yes, I often get thirsty.

No, I never get thirsty.

Are you ever sleepy?

Yes, I'm always sleepy.

No, I'm never sleepy.

Are you always busy?

Yes, I'm always busy.

No, I'm not always busy.

Is he always late?

Yes, he's always late.

Do you usually go there?

Yes, we usually go there.

No, we never go there.

Does your roommate often go to the movies?

Yes, he often does.

Do you always speak English?

Yes, I always do.

No, I usually don't.

Does he often study at night?

Yes, he usually studies at night.

No, he never studies at night.

Do they ever go to the movies?

Yes, they often go to the movies.



Now listen to this conversation and repeat.

Hello, Miss Abbott. How are you?

Hello, Mr. Edwards.  
I'm fine, thank you.

Do you always eat here?

No, not always.  
I often have lunch at a restaurant.  
This cafeteria is usually busy at noon.

Yes, that's true.  
Noon is the rush hour.  
Do you take a coffee break here?

Yes, I usually do.  
It's convenient to my office.

Here is another short conversation. We'll repeat this one too.

I need some cigarettes.

I do too.  
There's a cigarette machine over there.

I don't know how to operate it.

I don't either. But let's learn.  
Let's read the directions.

What coins can I use?  
Nickels, dimes, or quarters.

The cigarettes cost 30¢.  
I have plenty of change.

What brand do you want?  
Any brand will be fine.

Now let's practice some sentences using still, already, and yet. Listen to them and repeat.

The teacher isn't explaining the lesson yet.  
The teacher is already explaining the lesson.

John isn't writing the sentences yet.  
He's already writing the sentences.

Mary isn't here yet.  
Mary's already here.

The boy isn't up yet.  
He's already up.

We aren't watching TV yet.  
We're already watching TV.

They aren't listening to the tape yet.  
They're already listening to the tape.

They aren't in class yet.  
They're already in class.

I'm not driving a car yet.  
I'm already driving a car.

The students aren't eating lunch yet.  
They're already eating lunch.

The tape isn't on the recorder yet.  
It's already on the recorder.

Do you still study every day?  
No, I don't study every day.  
Yes, I still study every day.

The teacher is already explaining the lesson.  
The teacher is still explaining the lesson.

John is already writing the sentences.  
He is still writing the sentences.

Mary is already here.  
She is still here.

The child is already up.  
It is still up.

We're already watching TV.  
We're still watching TV.

They're already listening to the tape.  
They're still listening to the tape.

They're already in class.  
They're still in class.

I'm already driving a car.  
I'm still driving a car.

The students are already eating lunch.  
The students are still eating lunch.

The tape is already on the recorder.  
The tape is still on the recorder.

## SOUND AND INTONATION

**Listen.**

Adverbs are often stressed.

Listen and repeat.

A: What time does he get up?

B: He usually gets up late.

A: Does he ever get up early?

B: No he never does.

A: Do they always call a cab?

B: Yes, they usually call a cab.

A: We never call a cab.

B: Do you ever call a cab?

A: Is he still studying English?

B: Yes, he's still studying English.

A: Isn't he up yet?

B: No, he isn't up yet.

A: Does he already speak English?

B: Yes, he speaks English already.

A: Does she often correct the answers?

B: Yes, she often corrects the answers.

A: He sometimes corrects the answers.

B: You sometimes correct the answer.

/l/

Listen. Let's practice the sound of /l/ as in "like and will."

Let the tip of the tongue touch the tooth ridge just behind the upper teeth.

The middle of the tongue is usually lower in the mouth.

Remember that the sides don't touch anything. The air passes out over the sides of the tongue.

Listen and repeat.

like	look	long
hello	always	fly
all	will	well

## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

Special Expressions:

look for  
 as - - - as  
 try on  
 take off  
 put on  
 take a look at  
 anything else  
 pick up  
 have in mind

Some - any

No - not

Adjectives:

Comparison  
 Comparison of equals  
 Comparison of unequals

Sound and Intonation

Reduced Vowels:

as . . . as /əz . . . əz/

to /tə/

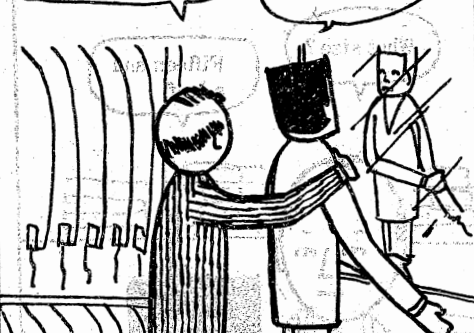
/ r /

Selling



Try this one, then. The style is different, and it'll probably fit better.

Yes, this one feels more comfortable. The sleeves are OK, too.



Yes, that does look good. I don't think it will need any alterations. Would you like to go in the dressing room and put on the trousers?

Well, let me take a look at this blue suit over here first. Oh, this price tag says \$49.50. Are they all as expensive as that?

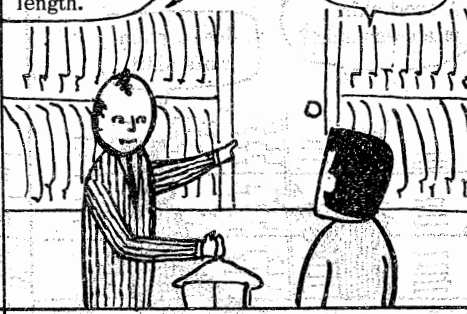
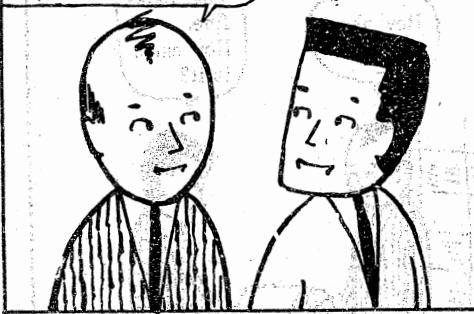


No, the gray one is only \$39.95. The blue one is more expensive because it's lined. The material is the same.

Well, let's see about the trousers of the gray one, then.

All right. Here they are. Go in that dressing room over there and put them on. Then come back here. I'll have the tailor see about the length.

Is there a charge for having the cuffs fixed?

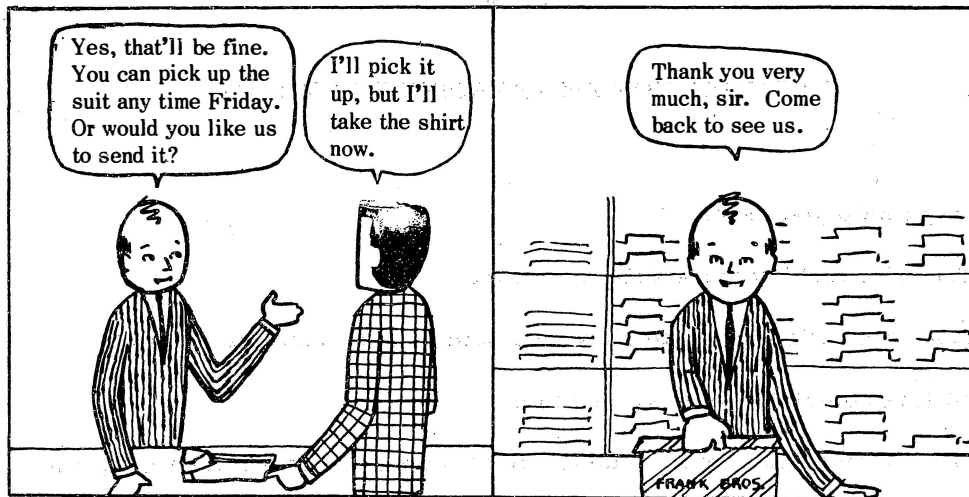


No, sir. There's no charge for having trouser cuffs fixed.









## UNIT 1203

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

Clerk: May I help you, sir?

John: Yes, I'm looking for a suit, size forty.

Clerk: Yes, sir. I'll be glad to show you some. Any particular color?

John: I'd like something in gray or blue.

Clerk: This is your size here. These are all good. Here's a nice gray one.

John: That's not as dark as I wanted.

Clerk: You want a darker gray? Is this more the color you had in mind?

John: Yes, that looks more like it.

Clerk: Take off your coat and try this one on.

John: The sleeves are not long enough.

Clerk: Try this one, then. The style is different and it'll probably fit better.

John: Yes, this one feels comfortable. The sleeves are O. K., too.

Clerk: Yes, that does look good. I don't think it will need any alterations. Would you like to go in the dressing room and put on the trousers?

John: Well, let me take a look at this blue suit over here first. Oh, this price tag says \$49.50. Are they all as expensive as that?

Clerk: No, the gray one is only \$39.95. The blue one is more expensive because it's lined. The material is the same.

John: Well, let's see about the trousers of the gray one, then.

Clerk: All right. Here they are. Go in that dressing room over there and put them on. Then come back here. I'll have the tailor see about the length.

John: Is there a charge for having the cuffs fixed?

Clerk: No, sir. There's no charge for having trouser cuffs fixed.

Clerk: Now, is there anything else you need - slacks, shirts, ties?

John: Well, I need a shirt . . . . .

Clerk: What size?

John: Fifteen and a half.

Clerk: A sport shirt, or a dress shirt?

John: Just a plain white shirt.

Clerk: How about this one?

John: That looks fine. How much is it?

Clerk: \$4.98.

John: All right. I'll take it. Now, how much is that in all?

Clerk: The suit's \$40.75, with tax, and the shirt is \$5.08. That's \$45.83. Is that cash or charge?

John: Cash, but I'll give you a check, if it's all right.

Clerk: Yes, that'll be fine. You can pick up the suit any time Friday. Or would you like us to send it?

John: I'll pick it up, but I'll take the shirt now.

Clerk: Thank you very much, sir. Come back to see us.

### New Vocabulary

sir	take off	comfortable
size	have in mind	alteration
suit	try on	trousers
dark	take a look at	lined
coat	pick up	material
fit	fitting room	tailor
length	price tag	cuffs
charge	sport shirt	slacks
fix	dress shirt	shirt
measure	button-down collar	tax
tie	particular	cash
look for	sleeve	check
put on	style	

Pattern Practice

## For Study and Drill

1. HELP  
 May I help you?  
 May I help you, sir?  
 Can I help you?  
 Did the teacher help you?
2. LOOK FOR  
 I'm looking for my pencil.  
 He's looking for his book.  
 What are you looking for?  
 I'm looking for a suit.
3. SIZE  
 What size suit do you wear?  
 What size shirt do you wear?  
 This is your size.  
 We don't have your size.  
 We don't have that suit in your size.
4. AS - AS  
 That's not as dark as I wanted.  
 That's not as comfortable as this one.  
 That's not as good as this one.  
 That's as pretty as this one.  
 This is as old as that one.
5. TRY ON  
 Try on this coat.  
 Try on these trousers.  
 Why don't you try this one on?  
 Why don't you try on that coat?
6. TAKE OFF  
 Take off your coat.  
 Take your coat off.  
 Take it off.  
 Don't take it off.  
 Why did he take his coat off?
7. PUT ON  
 Put on your coat.  
 Put it on.  
 Put on that one.  
 Put this one on.  
 Take off your old coat and put on your new one.
8. IT FITS  
 Does this coat fit?  
 Do these trousers fit?  
 The coat fits, but the trousers don't fit.

9. TAKE A LOOK AT  
 Take a look at this book.  
 Take a look at that suit.  
 Let me take a look at that suit.
10. THE SAME  
 The price is the same.  
 The material is the same.  
 The color is the same.
11. LET'S  
 Let's go.  
 Let's come back later.  
 Let's take a look at that suit.
12. SEE ABOUT  
 Let's see about the size.  
 I want to see about the price.  
 Ask the tailor to see about the length.
13. IS THERE A CHARGE?  
 Is there a charge for that?  
 Do you charge for that?  
 Do you charge for fixing that?
14. ANYTHING ELSE  
 Is there anything else you need?  
 There isn't anything else I need.  
 Is there anything else he wants?  
 There isn't anything else he wants.
15. HOW MUCH  
HOW MANY  
 How much is that?  
 How many is that?  
 How much is that in all?
16. PICK UP  
 I'll pick up the suit on Friday.  
 I'll pick it up on Friday.  
 She picked up the suit yesterday.  
 She picked it up yesterday.

### Vocabulary Practice

Be sure you understand the meaning of the new words and phrases.

1. SIR  
 May I help you, sir?  
 Do you like this suit, sir?  
 The doctor will see you now, sir.
2. SIZE  
 What's your size?  
 What size shoe do you wear?  
 This is the right size.

3. SUIT  
I'm looking for a suit.  
He wants to buy a suit.  
What size suit does he wear?
4. DARK  
He wants a dark suit.  
This suit is not as dark as I want.  
The room was dark, so I turned on the light.
5. COAT  
Put on your coat. It's cold outside.  
This coat isn't the right size.  
Are these coats all the same price?
6. FIT  
This suit doesn't fit. It isn't the right size.  
Does this coat fit?  
This coat fits better than that one.
7. LENGTH  
What is the length of this room?  
These trousers aren't the right length.  
This coat isn't the right length.
8. CHARGE  
Is this cash or charge?  
Do you charge for this?  
Is there a charge for fixing this?
9. FIX  
How long will it take to fix the car?  
How much do you charge for fixing the suit?  
We have to have our television fixed.
10. MEASURE  
I have to measure the room.  
He measured the length of the suit.  
The tailor will measure the trousers.
11. TIE  
I'm looking for a tie.  
He'd like to buy some ties.
12. SLEEVE  
The sleeves of this coat are too long.  
Can you fix the sleeves?  
I lost a button from my coat sleeve.
13. COMFORTABLE  
This is a very comfortable suit.  
The room isn't comfortable. It's too hot.  
Are you comfortable in that chair?

14. TROUSERS  
Where are the trousers that go with this suit?  
These trousers don't fit very well.  
Are the blue trousers the same price as the gray ones?
15. SHIRT  
What size shirt do you wear?  
What kind of shirt do you want?  
I'd like two white shirts and one blue one.
16. LOOK FOR  
What kind of suit are you looking for?  
I'm looking for a gray suit.  
What is he looking for?  
He's looking for his English book.
17. PUT ON  
Put on your coat and hat.  
He's putting on his suit.  
Don't put on your hat in the house.
18. TAKE OFF  
He took off his coat.  
Don't take your coat off, because it's cold.  
She took her new shoes off and put on some old ones.
19. HAVE IN MIND  
What kind of suit do you have in mind?  
I had in mind going swimming, but it rained.  
He has in mind going to the United States.
20. TRY ON  
Take off your old coat and try on this one.  
You must try on shoes before buying them.  
It isn't necessary to try on shirts.
21. TAKE A LOOK AT  
Take a look at that girl. She's pretty.  
There are some good stories in that book. Take a look at it.  
He took a look at his watch, and said it was 5:15.
22. PICK UP  
If you leave your laundry today, you can pick it up on Friday.  
I'll pick up my suit on Thursday.  
I'll have to pick up my friend at 8:30.

### Word Study Review

Read these sentences. Change the sentences to questions.

1. He's looking for a suit.
2. This is your size.
3. He tried on the coat.
4. That looks good.
5. He wants to take a look at this blue suit.
6. I do need a shirt.

7. The suit's \$40.24 with tax.
8. We don't have that suit in your size.
9. That's as good as this one.
10. The coat fits.
11. The price is the same.
12. She didn't go to the movies.
13. This girl is as pretty as her sister.
14. My coat isn't as old as yours.
15. These two brothers aren't alike.
16. This book is the same as that one.
17. That building is different from this one.
18. I get on the bus at 35th Street. I get off at Dupont Circle.
19. She left her clothes at the laundry on Monday.
20. Your watch is fast.

### Conversation Practice

Can you understand these questions? Can you answer them?

1. May I help you?
2. Why don't you take off your coat and try this one on?
3. Are all the suits as expensive as that?
4. Is there a charge for that?
5. Is there anything else you need?
6. What size shirt do you wear?
7. How much is that in all?
8. What are you looking for?
9. Why did he take his coat off?
10. Does this coat fit?
11. Do these trousers fit?
12. Is this girl as pretty as her sister?
13. Isn't this building as old as that one?
14. Aren't those two brothers different?
15. Are these chairs similar?
16. Is this book the same as that one?
17. Where do you get on the bus?
18. Where did he get off the bus?
19. What is she trying on?
20. What do you have in mind?
21. What time are you going to pick up your friends?
22. When will the taxi come to pick us up?
23. Is your watch fast?
24. Is this lesson as easy as the one before?
25. Is this book the same as that one?
26. Are you wearing a suit?
27. Did he get in the car?
28. Is he taking his hat off?
29. Did she put on her coat?
30. Do you need to try on a shirt before you buy it?



## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

1. Some - Any

We use some in affirmative sentences. We use any in negative and interrogative sentences.

Example: They have some friends here.  
 They don't have any friends here.  
 Do they have any friends here?

## a. Change to the negative form.

1. She has some books.
2. There are some recorders in the room.
3. He wrote some letters yesterday.
4. He took some friends with him.
5. Take some sandwiches with you.
6. He saw some students at the airport.
7. Mary gave me some suggestions.
8. Put some gas in the car.
9. He has some new pencils.

## b. Change to the question form.

1. He saw some friends yesterday.
2. She has some friends here.
3. There are some books in the room.
4. He found an error in the book.
5. He bought some new shirts yesterday.
6. She watched some TV shows last night.
7. He has some candy.
8. There are several large cities in the state.
9. He picked up some cleaning.
10. There are some new buses here.

2. No - Not

We may use no as an adjective. Not is an adverb, it modifies verbs.

Example: He has no classes.  
 He does not speak French.  
Not a student in her class was late.  
Not two people were present.  
Not many people were there.

Use the correct form - No or Not.

1. She does \_\_\_\_\_ speak English.
2. There were \_\_\_\_\_ booths in the lab.
3. Yesterday was \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday.
4. They have \_\_\_\_\_ time to study.
5. There was \_\_\_\_\_ enough gas to start the car.
6. They are \_\_\_\_\_ very good students.
7. There were \_\_\_\_\_ six students absent.
8. He has \_\_\_\_\_ family here.

### 3. Comparisons in English

a. There are several ways in English to compare things that are the same, or have similar qualities. Learn these three patterns:

<u>PATTERN 1</u>	<u>as ... Adjective ... as</u>
	as     pretty     as
	as     old     as
	as     new     as
	as     much     as
	as     many     as

- (1) This girl is as pretty as her sister.
- (2) My coat is as old as yours.
- (3) This building is as new as that one.
- (4) This girl is not as pretty as her sister.
- (5) My coat is not as old as yours.
- (6) This building is not as new as that one.
- (7) Is this girl as pretty as her sister?
- (8) Is my coat as new as yours?
- (9) Is this building as new as that one?
- (10) Isn't this girl as pretty as her sister?
- (11) Isn't my coat as old as yours?
- (12) Isn't this building as new as that one?

NOTE: So can be used instead of the first as in the negative.  
 ... not so pretty as ...

#### PATTERN 2

Plural subject     +     verb     +

the same  
 similar  
 alike  
 different

Statements

#### Affirmative

These books Those chairs These two brothers Those buildings	are  look (seem)	the same. similar. alike. different.
--	------------------------	---

Negative

Plural Subject + Verb + NOT +

(be)

the same  
similar  
alike  
different

These books Those chairs Those two brothers Those two buildings	aren't	the same. similar. alike. different.
--	--------	---

Questions

Affirmative

Verb + Plural Subject +

the same  
similar  
alike  
different

Are	these books those chairs those two brothers those two buildings	the same? similar? alike? different?
-----	--	---

Negative

Verb + NOT + Plural Subject +

the same  
similar  
alike  
different

Aren't	these books these chairs these two brothers these two buildings	the same? similar? alike? different?
--------	--	---

PATTERN 3

Affirmative

→ Singular subject + Verb + is + the same as + noun/pronoun  
similar to  
like  
different from

Statements

This book This chair This man	is	the same as similar to like	that one. that one. his brother.
This building		different from	that building.

Negative

Subject + Verb + NOT + isn't + the same as + noun/pronoun  
similar to  
like  
different from

This book That chair That man	isn't	the same as similar to like	that one. this one. his brother.
That building		different from	that one this one

Questions

Affirmative

Verb + Subject + is + the same as + noun/pronoun  
similar to  
like  
different from

Is	this book this chair that man	the same as similar to like	that one? his brother?
	this building.	different from	that one?

Negative

Verb + NOT Subject the same as + noun/pronoun  
 similar to  
 like  
 different

Isn't	this book that chair that man	the same as similar to like	that one? the other one? his brother?
	that building	different from	the other one? this one? that one?

Repeat these sentences:

1. This car is as old as that car.
2. Is this car as old as that car?
3. Isn't this car as old as that car?
4. These students look alike.
5. Do these students look alike?
6. Don't these students look alike?
7. These two books aren't different.
8. Are these two books different?
9. Aren't these two books different?
10. This chair is different from that one.
11. Is this chair different from that one?
12. Isn't this chair different from that one?

We often need to compare things that are different.

1. Adjectives of one syllable form the comparative by adding -er to the positive form:

small	smaller
big	bigger
long	longer
old	older

A few adjectives have irregular comparative forms.

good	better
bad	worse
much	more
little	less

2. To compare many longer adjectives we place more before them.

interesting	more interesting
expensive	more expensive
difficult	more difficult

3. When we use comparative forms we use than to connect the things that are different.

The blue suit is more expensive than the brown.

Lesson one is easier than lesson two.

He is a taller man than his brother.

John is a more careful driver than Joe.

This car is older than that car.

My coat is longer than yours.

Jim made more mistakes than Mary.

His room is larger than mine.

Book 1200 is more difficult than book 1100.

The weather today is colder than it was yesterday.

## TAPE 1203A

Listen to the following conversation.

Clerk: May I help you, sir?

John: Yes, I'm looking for a suit, size forty.

Clerk: Yes, sir. I'll be glad to show you some.  
Any particular color?

John: I'd like something in gray or blue.

Clerk: This is your size here.  
These are all good suits.  
Here's a nice gray one.

John: That's not as dark as I wanted.

Clerk: You probably wanted a darker gray.  
Is this more the color you had in mind?

John: Yes, that looks more like it.

Clerk: Take off your coat and try this one on.

John: The sleeves are not long enough.

Clerk: Try this one, then.  
The style is different and it'll probably fit better

John: Yes, this one feels more comfortable.  
The sleeves are O. K. too.

Clerk: Yes, that does look good. I don't think it will need any alterations.  
Would you like to go in the dressing room and put on the trousers?

John: Well, let me take a look at this blue suit over here first. Oh, this price tag says \$49.50. Are they all as expensive as that?

Clerk: No, the gray one is only \$39.95. The blue one is more expensive because it's lined. The material is the same.

John: Well, let's see about the trousers of the gray one, then.

Clerk: All right. Here they are. Go in that dressing room over there and put them on. Then come back here. I'll have the tailor see about the length.

John: Is there a charge for having the cuffs fixed?

Clerk: No, sir. There's no charge for having trouser cuffs fixed.

Now listen to part of this conversation again and repeat it.

**Listen and then repeat.**look for

I'm looking for a suit.  
I'll look for you tomorrow.  
Did you look for your book last night?

as . . . as

That's not as dark as I wanted.  
This suit is not as good as that one.  
My book is not as interesting as yours.

try on

I'll try this coat on.  
Try on these trousers.  
Why don't you try this one on?

take off

Take off your coat.  
Why did he take his coat off?  
Will you take your coat off?

put on

Put on your coat.  
Do you plan to put your coat on?  
He put on the new suit.

it fits

Does this coat fit?  
This suit doesn't fit.  
The coat fits.

take a look at

Take a look at this suit.  
Will you take a look at that book?  
Let me take a look at that car.

the same

Will the price be the same?  
The material was the same.  
The color isn't the same.



see about

Let's see about the size.  
 I want to see about the price.  
 I hope to see about the car.

Is there a charge?

Is there a charge for that?  
 There is no charge for fixing that.  
 Do you charge for the work?

Listen to the following statements. Then change them to questions.  
 Repeat the correct answer.

Example: He's looking for a suit.  
 Is he looking for a suit?  
 Is he looking for a suit?

He tried on the coat.

Did he try on the coat?

He wants to take a look at this suit.

Does he want to take a look at this suit?

That's as good as this one.

Is that as good as this one?

The price will be the same.

Will the price be the same?

These two brothers weren't alike.

Weren't these two brothers alike?

That house is different from this one.

Is that house different from this one?

I always go to this store.

Do I always go to this store?

The students usually went to town on Saturday.

Did the students usually go to town on Saturday?

She didn't go to the movies.

Didn't she go to the movies?

There will be a charge for that.

Will there be a charge for that?

Listen and repeat the following questions and answers.

Is he looking for a suit?

Yes, he's looking for a suit.

Is this your size?

No, this isn't my size.

Did he try on the coat?

Yes, he tried on the coat.

Does that look good on you?

No, it doesn't look good on me.

Will he take a look at this blue suit?

Yes, he'll take a look at this blue suit.

How much is this suit?

This suit is \$40.24 with tax.

Is that suit as good as this one?

No, that suit is not as good as this one.

Does that coat fit you?

Yes, that coat fits me.

Is John looking for a suit?

Yes, John is looking for a suit.

Is this girl as pretty as her sister?

No, this girl is not as pretty as her sister.

Did Jack take off his coat?

Yes, Jack took off his coat.

Will they take a look at this car?

Yes, they'll take a look at this car.

Do you want to see about a suit?

Yes, I want to see about a suit.

Is there a charge for fixing the trousers?

No, there is no charge for fixing the trousers?

Are these two brothers alike?

No, these two brothers are not alike.

Let's practice some sentences in the different tenses. Listen and then repeat the following.

I'm looking for a suit.

I was looking for a suit.

I'll look for a suit.

He wants a dark shirt.

He wanted a dark shirt.

He'll want a dark shirt.

That looks like it.

That looked like it.

That will look like it.

This one feels more comfortable.

This one felt more comfortable.

This one will feel more comfortable.

John takes off his coat in class.

John took off his coat in class.

John will take off his coat in class.

He usually comes back here.

He usually came back here.

He'll usually come back here.

They fix the cuffs without charge.

They fixed the cuffs without charge.

They'll fix the cuffs without charge.

I always try on trousers in a store.

I always tried on trousers in a store.

I'll always try on trousers in a store.

I have this color in mind.

I had this color in mind.

I'll have this color in mind.

Do you ever buy blue shirts?

Did you ever buy blue shirts?

Will you ever buy blue shirts?

## TAPE 1203B

Listen.

In the last tape John bought a suit. He is still in the store. He wants to buy other things. Listen to the conversation between him and the clerk.

Clerk: Now, is there anything else you need - slacks, shirts, ties?

John: Well, I need a shirt . . . .

Clerk: What size?

John: Fifteen and a half.

Clerk: A sport shirt, or a dress shirt?

John: Just a plain white shirt.

Clerk: How about this one?

John: That looks fine. How much is it?

Clerk: \$4.98.

John: All right. I'll take it.  
Now, how much is that in all?

Clerk: The suit's \$40.75, with tax,  
and the shirt is \$5.08.  
That's \$45.83.  
Is that cash or charge?

John: Cash, but I'll give you a check,  
if it's all right.

Clerk: That'll be fine.  
Pick up the suit any time Friday.  
Or shall we send it?

John: I'll pick it up,  
but I'll take the shirt now.

Clerk: Thank you very much, sir.  
Come back to see us.

Listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to the following words and expressions, then repeat them.

anything else

Is there anything else you want?  
 I don't want anything else now.  
 Does he need anything else?  
 There isn't anything else he needs.

how much

How much is the shirt?  
 How much does the book cost?  
 How much coffee did you drink?  
 How much is that in all?

how many

How many books do you have?  
 How many is that?  
 How many shirts did he buy?  
 How many times do you read your lesson?

how about

How about this suit?  
 How about buying this suit?  
 How about going to town tonight?  
 How about reading that English book?

pick up

I'll pick up the suit tomorrow.  
 We pick him up every day.  
 Will you pick up your book, please?  
 They picked it up yesterday.

You will now hear some statements and then some questions about these statements.  
 Answer the questions and repeat the correct responses.

Example: This suit costs \$49.50.  
 How much does this suit cost?  
 This suit costs \$49.50  
 This suit costs \$49.50

I pay \$45.83 in all.  
 How much do I pay in all?

I pay \$45.83 in all.

My friend bought three shirts.  
 How many shirts did my friend buy?

My friend bought three shirts.

I drink a lot of coffee every day.  
 How much coffee do I drink every day?

I drink a lot of coffee every day.

I read my lesson six times.  
How many times did you read your lesson?

I read my lesson six times.

He'll pick up his suit tomorrow.  
When will he pick up his suit?

He'll pick up his suit tomorrow.

We'll pick you up every day.  
When will we pick you up?

We'll pick you up every day.

There is a charge of \$5.00 for this.  
Is there a charge for this?

There is a charge of \$5.00 for this.

Take off your coat to try on the suit.  
Why do you take off your coat?

Take off your coat to try on the suit.

We are looking for dress shirts.  
What are we looking for?

We are looking for dress shirts.

The students need three books.  
How many books do the students need?

The students need three books.

We'll now practice the use of some adverbs. Listen to these sentences and then repeat them.

Do you usually take the bus to town?  
Yes, I usually take the bus to town.  
No, I never take the bus to town.

Do you every fly to New York?  
Yes, I often fly to New York.  
No, I never fly to New York.

Do you want anything else?  
Yes, I want something else.  
No, I don't want anything else.

Do you already know English?  
Yes, I already know English.  
No, I don't know English yet.

Is the train crowded yet?  
Yes, the train is already crowded.  
No, the train is not crowded yet.

Do you still like bacon and eggs?

Yes, I still like bacon and eggs.

No, I still don't like bacon and eggs.

Does John ever wear brown suits?

Yes, John sometimes wears brown suits.

No, John doesn't ever wear brown suits.

Is he already eating lunch?

Yes, he is already eating lunch.

No, he is not eating lunch yet.

Does Paul usually work at night?

Yes, Paul always works at night.

No, Paul never works at night.

Aren't they ever in class?

Yes, they are sometimes in class.

No, they are never in class.

Listen to the following sentences. You will later answer some questions about them.

I went downtown yesterday.

I want to buy a suit.

I also needed a shirt.

Now answer the following questions. Then repeat the correct answer.

When did I go downtown?

I went downtown yesterday.

Where did I go yesterday?

I went downtown yesterday.

Why did I go downtown yesterday?

I wanted to buy a suit.

Where did I go to buy a suit?

I went downtown to buy a suit.

Did I need anything else?

I needed a shirt.

Listen to these sentences. You will later answer some questions about them.

I rode the bus downtown.

The suit and the shirt cost \$50.00.

Then I went home.

I took the bus home.

Now answer the following questions. Then repeat the correct answer.

How did I go downtown?

I rode the bus downtown.

What did I buy downtown?

I bought a suit and a shirt.

How much did I pay for them?

I paid \$50.00 for them.

Where did I go then?

I went home.

How did I go home?

I took the bus home.



## TAPE 1203C

Listen to the following telephone conversation.

A: Hello.

B: Hello. May I speak to Mr. Jones?

A: This is Mr. Jones, John Jones.

B: Oh, I didn't recognize your voice.  
You and your brother sound alike.  
Do you know who I am?

A: No, I don't recognize your voice, either.

B: Remember your college roommate?

A: Charlie! Your voice sounded the same as Henry's.  
Where did you come from?  
Where are you?

B: I got in last night.  
I'm visiting my younger sister, Mary.  
You remember Dorothy, my older sister?  
Mary looks like Dorothy.  
I want you to meet her.  
Can we get together soon?

A: Let's have dinner together tonight.  
Do you have transportation?

B: My car's not working.  
But I can drive my sister's.  
Our cars are similar.

A: What time shall we meet?

B: Let me ask my sister  
She suggests eight o'clock.

A: Fine. Where shall we go?

B: Let's go some place where we can talk.

A: What about the National Club?

B: The National is nice.  
But the Metropolitan is quieter.  
It is also more interesting and has better food.

A: Let's go there.

We'll see you about eight. Good-bye.

B: Good-bye.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Now let's practice some vocabulary.  
Listen and repeat.

recognize

John didn't recognize his old friend.  
Did you recognize my voice?  
We recognized them yesterday.  
Why didn't you recognize me last night?

sound

That sounds like music.  
His voice sounds like mine.  
Do they sound the same?  
That doesn't sound like you.

roommate

John is my roommate.  
Who is your roommate?  
We often change roommates.  
How many roommates do you have?

remember

He didn't remember me.  
They remembered us.  
Did you remember to bring your books?  
No, I didn't remember to bring them.

together

We are going to eat together.  
I often see them together.  
They sometimes ride together.  
Do you expect to arrive together?

transportation

Do you have transportation for tonight?  
He has transportation to town.  
May we have transportation to the theater?  
Our friends give us transportation home.

suggest

What do you suggest?  
I suggest going to the theater.  
They suggested eating at the club.  
He suggested a trip to the mountains.

Here are some sentences expressing comparisons. Listen to them and then repeat.

This girl is as pretty as her sister.  
This girl is not as pretty as her sister.

My coat is as old as yours.  
My coat isn't as old as yours.

This building is as new as that one.  
This building isn't so new as that one.

Our books are the same.  
Our books aren't the same.

Those buildings are alike.  
Those buildings aren't alike.

Are your two brothers different?  
Aren't your two brothers different?

His book is different from your book.  
His book isn't different from your book.

This building is similar to that one.  
This building isn't similar to that one.

Our chairs are like theirs.  
Our chairs aren't like theirs.

Here are some sentences using the comparative forms of adjectives.  
Listen to them and then repeat them.

This is a 1958 car. That is a 1963 car.

This car is older than that car.  
That car is not as old as this car.

My book is interesting. Your book is not interesting.

My book is more interesting than yours.  
Your book is not as interesting as mine.

John's coat is short. Bill's coat is long.

John's coat is shorter than Bill's.  
Bill's coat is not so short as John's.

Jim made ten mistakes. Mary also made 10 mistakes.

Jim didn't make more mistakes than Mary.  
Mary made as many mistakes as Bill.

The weather is bad today. It was good yesterday.

The weather is worse today than it was yesterday.  
The weather was not as bad yesterday as it is today.

Their house is new. My house is old.

Their house is newer than mine.  
My house is not as new as theirs.

John's apartment is large. Your apartment is small.

John's apartment is larger than yours.  
Your apartment is not as large as John's.

Mary is pretty. June is also pretty.

Mary is not prettier than June.  
June is as pretty as Mary.

His shirt cost \$5.00. My shirt cost \$3.50.

His shirt is more expensive than mine.  
My shirt is not so expensive as his.

These words are difficult. Those words are easy.

These words are more difficult than those words.  
Those words are not as difficult as these words.

You will now hear an affirmative statement. Change the sentence to a negative statement using any and then repeat the correct response.

Example: They have some friends here.  
They don't have any friends here.  
They don't have any friends here.

She has some books.

She doesn't have any books.

He wrote some letters yesterday.

He didn't write any letters yesterday.

He took some friends with him.

He didn't take any friends with him.

Put some gas in the car.

Don't put any gas in the car.

Mary gave some suggestions.

Mary didn't give any suggestions.

You will now hear an affirmative statement. Change the sentence to a question using any and repeat the response.

Example: He saw some students at the concert.  
Did he see any students at the concert?  
Did he see any students at the concert?

She has some friends here.

Does she have any friends here?

There are some books in the room.

Are there any books in the room?

He found some errors in the book.

Did he find any errors in the book?

He bought some new shirts yesterday.

Did he buy any new shirts?

There are some new buses here.

Are there any new buses here?

You will now hear a question. Change the question to an affirmative statement, and repeat the correct response.

Example: Did he pick up any cleaning?  
Yes, he picked up some cleaning.  
Yes, he picked up some cleaning.

Did she watch any TV shows last night?

Yes, she watched some TV shows last night.

Does he have any candy?

Yes, he has some candy.

Are there any large cities in the state?

There are some large cities in the state.

Does he have any new pencils?

Yes, he has some new pencils.

Did you take any sandwiches with you?

Yes, I took some sandwiches with me.

## Sound and Intonation

Notice the Reduced Vowel in the Comparative Adjectives AS - AS

Listen and repeat.

He's as old as she is.

/ əz /        / əz /

My car is as new as his.

Jane is not as pretty as Mary.

We study as much as they do.

He has as many tapes as I have.

Notice the Reduced Vowel in "To" before a consonant

Listen and repeat.

He will arrive at 8:00.

He plans to arrive at 8:00.

/tu/

He expects to arrive at 8:00.

/tu/

He hopes to arrive at 8:00.

/tu/

Will they come by plane?

Do they plan to come by plane?

/tə/

Do they expect to come by plane?

/tə/

Do they hope to come by plane?

/tə/

/ r /

Curve the tip of the tongue back, but don't let it touch anything. Let the sides of the tongue touch the back teeth.

Listen and repeat.

are	room
car	red
star	write

## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

## Modal Auxiliaries

Can, may, would, should, must

in statements

in questions

contractions

negative forms

Sound and Intonation

## Stress of Auxiliary Verbs

/ ɪ / and / ɪ /

Conversation About Travel in the United States.





## UNIT 1204

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

Dialog

- A: What places do you want to visit in the United States?
- B: I want to visit New York. That sounds like an interesting city to me.
- A: I want to see some National Parks. The Grand Canyon first, then Yellowstone and...
- B: Wait a minute. How much time do you think you'll have? Do you know how far apart those places are?
- A: Aren't they all in the West?
- B: Yes, but it's a big country. It's a thousand miles from the Grand Canyon to Yellowstone Park.
- C: How far is it from San Francisco to New York?
- B: It's about three thousand miles, I think. Why?
- C: Well, I have a cousin in New York and a friend in San Francisco. I want to visit both of them while I'm in the States.
- B: Maybe you can, if you can go by plane. It takes just a few hours to fly across the country.
- A: How long do you think it will take us to go from here to the States?
- B: It depends on how we go. It doesn't take very long by plane, but it takes a long time by ship.

Reading

## The Geography of the United States

The United States is a very big country. It is about twenty-eight hundred miles from east to west, and about sixteen hundred miles from north to south. Canada is north, Mexico and the Gulf of Mexico are south, the Atlantic Ocean is east, and the Pacific Ocean is west of the the United States.

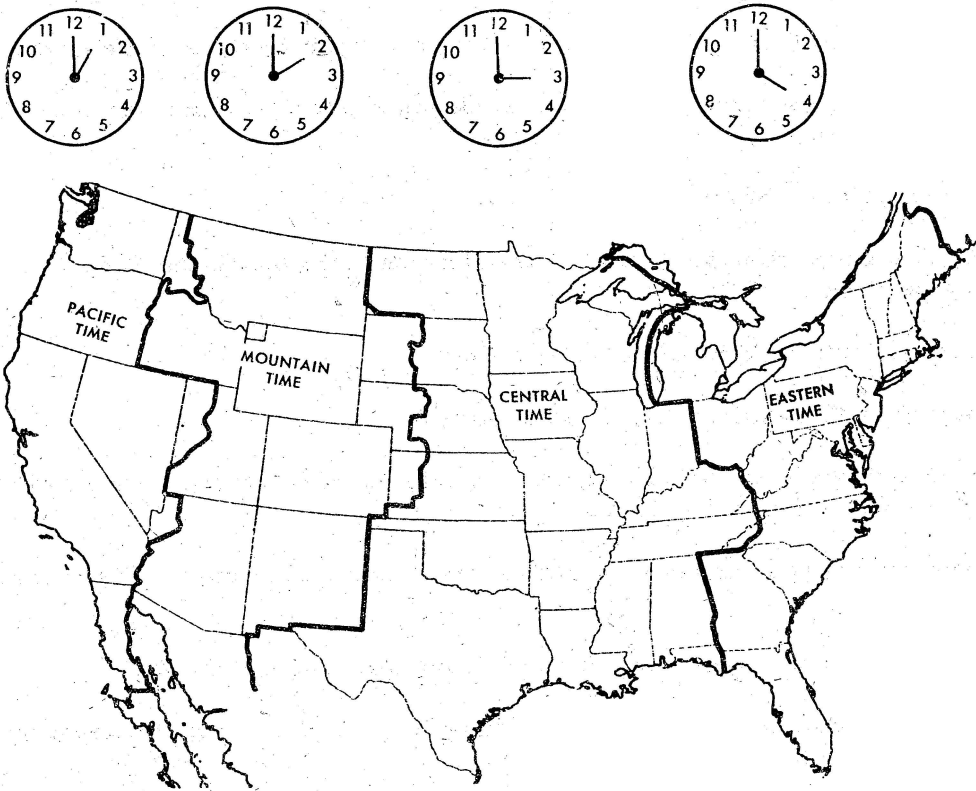
The United States is so big that it is hard to describe. The northeastern part is an important manufacturing region. There are many factories around the large cities, such as New York, Philadelphia and Boston. These cities are also ports. They carry on a lot of trade.

At one time the southeast had only one important crop: cotton. Cotton is still important, but other crops now grow there, too. Industries, especially textile mills, are moving south because of the warm climate and the good labor supply. There is a

lot of oil in Texas and Louisiana. Houston, the largest city in the South, is an important port, especially for trade with South America.

The Middle West grows a lot of corn and wheat. They also raise beef cattle. It is an important manufacturing region too. We make most of our cars in Detroit, Michigan. Chicago is the center of the meat packing industry.

Farther to the West, are more beef cattle, hogs, and sheep. Vegetables and fruits are also important crops in the West. Mining is very important, too. We carry on fishing and lumbering in the northwestern coastal region. The port cities on the west coast are important for trade with the Asian countries..



Standard Time Zones across the United States.

### Pattern Practice

1. a big country  
The United States is a big country.  
Canada is a big country.  
Mexico is a big country.
2. How far is it?  
How far is it from Canada to Mexico?  
How far is it from the east coast to the west coast?  
How far is it from New York to Chicago?
3. It's about twenty-eight hundred miles.  
It's about sixteen hundred miles.  
It's about six hours by plane.  
It's about eighteen hours by train.
4. What kind of work do we carry on here?  
They carry on much manufacturing there.  
We carry on a lot of trade from this port.
5. an important crop  
Cotton is an important crop in the South.  
Wheat is an important crop in the Middle West.  
What are the important crops here?
6. grow  
A lot of cotton grows in the South.  
We grow a lot of corn in the Middle West.  
Do you grow many vegetables here?
7. important industries  
What are the important industries here?  
Making cars is an important industry in Detroit.  
Meat packing is an important industry in Chicago.
8. What about fishing?  
Is fishing an important industry?  
What about mining?  
Is mining an important industry?

### Vocabulary Practice

Be sure you understand the meaning of the new words.

1. North  
The weather is cold in the North.  
The weather was cold in the North.  
The weather will be cold in the North.
2. South  
Cotton is an important crop in the South.  
The weather is hot in the South.  
Houston is the largest city in the South.

3. East  
The sun rises in the east.  
How far is it from the east coast to the west coast?  
Would you rather live in the East or in the West?
4. West  
We raise a lot of beef cattle in the West.  
Los Angeles is the largest city in the West.  
There are many national parks in the West.
5. Port  
New York is the largest port city on the East Coast.  
Philadelphia is an important river port.  
What is the most important port city in your country?
6. Trade  
There is a lot of trade between the United States and Europe.  
Ports in the West Coast have much trade with the Far East.  
Is there much trade between your country and the United States?
7. Manufacture  
We manufacture automobiles in Detroit.  
The Northeast is a manufacturing region.  
Where do we manufacture these planes?
8. Region  
What are the most important agricultural regions in this country?  
The West is a mountainous region.  
Does this region have a good climate?
9. Industry  
Meat packing is the main industry in Chicago.  
Washington has very few industries.  
What are the leading industries in your country?
10. Crop  
The crops were bad this year, because there wasn't enough rain.  
Cotton is an important crop in the South.  
Vegetables and fruits are the most important crops here.
11. Raise  
Raise the window, please.  
They raise sheep and cattle in the West.  
They raise hogs there, too.
12. Mining  
Coal mining is important in Pennsylvania.  
An important industry in Colorado is silver mining.  
Is there any mining in your country?
13. Fishing  
Fishing is his favorite sport.  
Fishing is an important industry on the coast.  
Do you enjoy fishing?

14. Lumbering  
Lumbering is an important industry in the Northwest.  
Lumbering is important in Canada, too.  
Lumbering is not important here, because there are not enough trees.
15. Coast  
Do you live near the coast?  
New York is the most important seaport on the East Coast.  
What is the biggest port on the West Coast?
16. Describe  
It's hard to describe the United States, because it's so big.  
Can you describe the scenery in your country?  
Describe the appearance of this room.
17. Farther  
Is it farther from New York to Chicago than it is from Chicago to San Francisco?  
I'm tired and I can't walk any farther.  
He has farther to go to work every day than you do.
18. Textile mill  
What is a textile mill?  
They make cloth in a textile mill.  
There are many textile mills in the South.
19. Meat packing  
Chicago is the center of the meat packing industry.  
Do we do any meat packing here?  
Did we do any meat packing here?  
Will we do any meat packing here?

### Review

Can you understand these sentences? Add a sentence about each one.

1. The United States is so big that it is hard to describe.
2. There are many factories around New York.
3. The Middle West grows a lot of corn and wheat.
4. There is a lot of oil in Texas and Louisiana.
5. Chicago is the center of the meat packing industry.
6. We make most of our cars in Detroit, Michigan.
7. Vegetables and fruits are important crops in some parts of the West.
8. It's quite a distance from New York to Chicago.
9. It's almost three thousand miles from the east coast to the west coast.
10. It takes about five days to go from the United States to Europe by boat.

11. I saw Mary at the movies last night.
12. They enjoyed their visit in New York a lot last year.
13. He didn't like the climate in the South very much last summer.
14. I hope to see you in the United States next year.
15. I have a cousin in New York and a friend in San Francisco, and I want to visit them both.
16. I'll see you in Washington.

### Conversation Practice

Can you answer these questions?

1. How long does it take to go from here to Chicago?
2. How long does it take to go from New York to Europe?
3. How long does it take to go downtown from here?
4. How far is your house from here?
5. How far is it from New York to San Francisco?
6. How far is it to the coast?
7. Is this an agricultural region?
8. Is this a manufacturing region?
9. What are the most important industries?
10. What are the most important crops?
11. What city is the most important port on the Atlantic coast?
12. Which city is the center of the meat packing industry?

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## 1. Some Important Modals in English

can	will	should
may	would	must

## a. Affirmative uses of modals.

I can go.  
(modal)

I will go.  
(modal)

Statements:      Subject    +    MODAL    +    Main Verb  
                          I                            can                            go.

Questions:        MODAL    +    Subject.    +    Main Verb  
                          Can                            he                            go?

NOTE:    The modal will contracts with subject pronouns.

I        + will = I'll  
You    + will = You'll  
We     + will = We'll  
They   + will = They'll  
He     + will = He'll  
She    + will = She'll  
It      + will = It'll

Modals have no third-person singular form. One form is used for all subjects:

I, you, we, they, he, she, it + MODAL

## b. Negative uses of modals

can    + not = can't (or cannot)  
may    + not = may not  
will    + not = won't  
would + not = wouldn't  
should + not = shouldn't  
must   + not = mustn't

I can't go.  
They may not go.  
We won't go.  
They wouldn't go.  
They shouldn't go.  
They mustn't go.

## c. Practice modals in English

## CAN

I can go.  
Can I go?  
Yes, I can.  
No, I can't.  
I cannot go.

Can expresses ability.  
Cannot or can't expresses inability.  
Example: I can go tomorrow.  
                  I can't go tomorrow.

He can go.  
 Can he go?  
 Yes, he can.  
 No, he can't.  
 He cannot go.

You can go.  
 Can you go?  
 Yes, you can.  
 No, you can't.  
 You cannot go.

They can go.  
 Can they go?  
 Yes, they can.  
 No, they can't.  
 They cannot go.

We can go.  
 Can we go?  
 Yes, we can.  
 No, we can't.  
 We cannot go.

#### MAY

They may come.  
 May they come?  
 Yes, they may.  
 No, they may not.

We may come.  
 May we come?  
 Yes, we may.  
 No, we may not.

He may come.  
 May he come?  
 Yes, he may.  
 No, he may not.

You may come.  
 May you come?  
 Yes, you may.  
 No, you may not.

We use can in making requests;  
 (However some people prefer may  
 and consider can inappropriate.)  
 Example: Can I see you for a minute?  
 or May I see you for a minute?

We use can and may in giving permission.  
 Example: You can leave your books here.  
 or You may leave your books here.

Cannot, can't, and may not indicate  
 permission is not given.  
 Example: You can't leave until eight  
 o'clock.  
 You may not leave until eight  
 o'clock.

We use may in making requests.  
 Example: May I borrow your pencil?

We use may in giving permission.  
 Example: You may come in now.

May not indicates permission is not given.  
 Example: No, he may not.

May also indicates possibility and  
 probability.  
 Example: She may be here.  
 It may rain tonight.

May not also indicates lack of possibility or  
 probability.  
 Example: He may not come after all.



## WILL

I will go.  
 Will I go?  
 Yes, I will.  
 No, I won't.  
 I will not go.

Will indicates future time.

Example: The class will start at 7:30.

She will go.  
 Will she go?  
 Yes, she will.  
 No, she won't.  
 She will not go.

Will used with the first person often indicates a promise.

Example: I will write often.  
 (I promise to write often.)

You will go.  
 Will you go?  
 Yes, you will.  
 No, you won't.  
 You will not go.

They will go.  
 Will they go?  
 Yes, they will.  
 No, they won't.  
 They will not go.

We will go.  
 Will we go?  
 Yes, we will.  
 No, we won't.  
 We will not go.  
 The bus will leave at noon.  
 It won't leave at noon.

## WOULD

She would come.  
 Would she come?  
 Yes, she would.  
 No, she wouldn't.  
 She would not come.

Sentences such as "She would come." or "Would she come?" suggest that fulfillment depends on some condition.

Example: She would come (if she had time.)

He would come.  
 Would he come?  
 Yes, he would.  
 No, he wouldn't.  
 He would not come.

They would come.  
 Would they come?  
 They wouldn't come.  
 Wouldn't they come?  
 Wouldn't it start?  
 It wouldn't start.

Would not or wouldn't indicates a negative attitude.

Example: He wouldn't try to speak English.

## SHOULD

She should come.  
Should she come?  
Yes, she should.  
No, she shouldn't.  
She should not come.

He should come.  
Should he come?  
Yes, he should.  
No, he shouldn't.  
He should not come.

They should come.  
Should they come?  
Yes, they should.  
No, they shouldn't.  
They should not come.

I should come.  
Should I come?  
Yes, I should.  
No, I shouldn't.  
I should not come.

Should indicates obligation and necessity.  
Example: You should study more.

Should not or shouldn't indicates an obligation not to do something when it is used in a negative statement.  
Example: You shouldn't drive so fast.

1. Questions introduced by should ask for advice.
  2. Those introduced by shouldn't offer suggestions.
- Example: 1. Should I call this late?  
(Do you think I should call?)  
2. Shouldn't he study more?  
(Don't you think he should study more?)

## MUST

We must hurry.  
Must we hurry?  
Yes, we must.  
No, we mustn't.  
We must not hurry.

He must hurry.  
Must he hurry?  
Yes, he must.  
No, he mustn't.  
He must not hurry.

She must hurry.  
Must she hurry?  
Yes, she must.  
No, she mustn't.  
She must not hurry.

They must hurry.  
Must they hurry?  
Yes, they must.  
No, they mustn't.  
They must not hurry.

Must indicates a strong sense of obligation.  
Example: You must report to headquarters.

Must not or mustn't indicates a strong sense of obligation not to do something.  
Example: You must not call after midnight.

## Grammar Drill

### Drill 1 - Modals in English

1. Can you go to the movies tonight?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Will they see a good picture?  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Should we finish the lesson quickly?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
4. May we begin the text now?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Must he finish his homework before dinner?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Should they hurry?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Will the teacher be late to class?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Should they make mistakes?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Should they open the letter now?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Should you stay home tomorrow?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Should Mark read that book?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.

### Drill 2 - Change to Negative Questions

1. They should hurry and finish the lesson.
2. We will make many mistakes.
3. You can speak English very well.
4. John should begin his lessons before dinner.
5. Mary will begin her lessons after dinner.
6. I will have a chance to see a good movie.

### Drill 3 - Contrast Affirmative and Negative Forms of Modals

1. I can go to the dance, but you \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We can speak English, but they \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He can understand the lesson, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mary can't leave tonight, but John \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Mr. Smith can't watch television in the morning, but Mrs. Smith \_\_\_\_\_.
6. These people can't come, but those people \_\_\_\_\_.

## Drill 4 - Complete the Statements

1. I can't speak French, but you \_\_\_\_\_.
2. They won't finish tonight, but we \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Mary shouldn't study the next lesson, but John \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He mustn't be awakened early, but she \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The little children may not stay up late, but the big children \_\_\_\_\_.

## Drill 5 - Use the Proper Modal Form

1. I can speak English well. \_\_\_\_\_ you?
2. They must go to the bank. \_\_\_\_\_ we?
3. Mr. Smith should buy some new clothes. \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Smith?
4. Girls may not play football. \_\_\_\_\_ boys?
5. He will not take a trip next week. \_\_\_\_\_ she?

## Drill 6 - Answer.

1. Will Peter help us with our lessons?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Will the school be open tomorrow?  
Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Will they ride the bus?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Will Alice have a vacation?  
Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Will the teacher give us a lot of homework?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Will we hear new tapes in the laboratory?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
7. May we come to your party?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
8. May we smoke in here?  
No, you \_\_\_\_\_.
9. May the dog come into the restaurant?  
No, it \_\_\_\_\_.
10. May we have your name and address?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
11. May I leave class early today?  
No, you \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Must John study harder?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.

13. Must we finish before dinner?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Must you go to the doctor tomorrow?  
Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Must I mail the letter today?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Should we hurry and finish our lessons?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Should we wait until tomorrow?  
No, we \_\_\_\_\_.
18. Should Janet call her mother?  
Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.

## TAPE 1204A

Listen to the following conversation.

A: What places do you want to visit in the United States?

B: I want to visit New York.  
That sounds like an interesting city.

A: I want to see some National Parks.  
The Grand Canyon first, then Yellowstone.

B: Wait a minute.  
How much time do you have?  
Do you know how far apart those places are?

A: Aren't they all in the West?

B: Yes, but it's a big country.  
It's a thousand miles  
from the Grand Canyon to Yellowstone Park.

A: How far is it from San Francisco to New York?

B: It's about three thousand miles, I think. Why?

A: I have a cousin in New York  
and a friend in San Francisco.  
I want to visit both of them  
while I'm in the States.

B: Maybe you can,  
if you can go by plane.  
It takes just a few hours  
to fly across the country.

A: How long do you think it will take us  
to go from here to the States?

B: It depends on how we go.  
It doesn't take very long by plane,  
but it takes a long time by ship.

Listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Vocabulary drill. Listen and then repeat.

### A big country

The United States is a big country.

Canada is a big country.

Mexico is a big country.

### How far is it?

How far is it from Canada to Mexico?

How far is it from the east coast to the west coast?

How far is it from New York to Chicago?

### About

It's about twenty-eight hundred miles.

It's about sixteen hundred miles.

It's about six hours by plane.

It's about eighteen hours by train.

### North

The weather is cold in the North.

Boston is north of New York.

Canada is north of the United States.

### South

Cotton is an important crop in the South.

The weather is hot in the South.

Houston is the largest city in the South.

### East

The sun rises in the east.

There are many cities on the east coast.

They like to live in the East.

### West

There are lots of beef cattle in the West.

Los Angeles is on the West Coast.

There are many national parks in the West.

### Port

New York is a port in the East.

Philadelphia is an important river port.

What is an important port in your country?

### Trade

The United States has a lot of trade with Europe.

Does your country trade with the United States?

The West Coast has much trade with Asia.

### Manufacture

We manufacture automobiles in Detroit.

The Northeast is a manufacturing region.

Where are these planes manufactured?

### Region

What are the most important agricultural regions?

The West is a mountainous region.

Does this region have a good climate?

### National Parks

There many national parks in the United States.

Aren't many national parks in the West?

Many people visit the national parks.

Let's practice some expressions of distance in English. Listen and repeat.

How far is it?

It's quite a distance.

It's a long way.

It's not very far.

How far is it from New York to San Francisco?

It's quite far.

It's a long way.

It's almost three thousand miles.

It about six hours by plane.

How far is your house from here?

Not very far.

Just a couple of blocks.

It's close.

About fifteen minutes by bus.

Notice that distance can also be expressed in terms of time.  
Listen to these expressions and repeat them.

How long does it take?

It doesn't take long.

It takes several hours.

It takes about twenty minutes.

How long does it take to go downtown from here?

It takes about a half hour by bus.

It takes about twenty minutes by car.

How long does it take you?

It takes me about ten minutes.

How long does it take you to get to class from your house?

I can walk it in ten minutes.

It takes me about twenty minutes by bus.

How long does it take to go to Chicago?

It takes about three hours by plane.

It takes about twelve hours by train.



You will now hear a statement and then a question about it. Answer the question and repeat the correct response.

Example:     There are many factories around New York.  
                   Where do we find many factories?  
                   We find many factories around New York.  
                   We find many factories around New York.

Yellowstone is a national park in the West.  
 Where is Yellowstone Park?

Yellowstone Park is in the West.

It is three thousand miles from New York to San Francisco.  
 How far is it from New York to San Francisco?

It is three thousand miles from New York to San Francisco.

The Middle West grows a lot of corn and wheat.  
 Where do we grow a lot of corn?

We grow a lot of corn in the Middle West.

Chicago is the center of the meat packing industry.  
 What is the center of the meat packing industry?

Chicago is the center of the meat packing industry.

Vegetables are important crops in the West.  
 Where do we raise vegetables?

We raise many vegetables in the West.

Cotton is an important crop in the South.  
 What is an important crop in the South?

Cotton is an important crop in the South.

There is much mining in the mountains.  
 Where is there much mining?

There is much mining in the mountains.

We find much oil in Texas.  
 What do we find in Texas?

We find much oil in Texas.

Let's now practice some sentences in different tenses. Listen to these sentences and repeat them.

I'll visit many places next year.  
I visit many places each year.  
I visited many places last year.

We'll want to see Yellowstone Park.  
We want to see Yellowstone Park.  
We wanted to see Yellowstone Park.

They'll see the Grand Canyon in the morning.  
They see the Grand Canyon every year.  
They saw the Grand Canyon last month.

He'll be in the West next week.  
He's in the West now.  
He was in the West yesterday.

How much time will you have?  
How much time do you have?  
How much time did he have?

You'll know about it tomorrow.  
You know about it now.  
You knew about it last month.

It'll take five hours to fly across the country.  
It takes five hours to fly across the country.  
It took five hours to fly across the country.

Will you wait for us at the station?  
Are you waiting for us at the station?  
Were you waiting for us at the station?

I'll think about the book tomorrow.  
I often think about the book.  
I thought about the book last night.

She'll do her work this evening.  
She does her work well.  
She always did her work well.

## TAPE 1204B

Listen to the following conversation.

A: Did Mary go downtown to buy a radio last week?

B: Yes, she did.  
She went to a department store to buy one.

A: Do they sell many different kinds of radios there?

B: Oh yes, there are large ones and small ones.

A: Do they also have transistor radios?

B: Yes, but they aren't cheap.

A: What kind of a radio did she want to buy?

B: She wanted to buy a small one.

A: What kind did she look at?

B: She looked at table radios and transistors.

A: Were the transistors small?

B: Yes, some of them were very small.  
However, they were very expensive.

A: Did Mary have much money?

B: No, she didn't have much.  
She looked at them for a long time.  
She listened to all of them.

A: What did she do?

B: She finally decided to buy a table radio.

A: Was it a transistor?

B: No, it wasn't.

A: How much did she pay for it?

B: It cost fifteen dollars.  
She thought it was a bargain.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to these questions and answers. Then repeat them.

Did Mary go downtown last week?

Yes, she went downtown.

No, she didn't go.

Who went?

Mary did.

Did Mary buy a transistor radio?

Yes, she bought a new radio.

No, she didn't buy a transistor.

What did she buy?

She bought a table radio.

Did the store sell radios?

Yes, they sold many radios.

No, they didn't sell many.

What did the department store sell?

Everything.

Did she want to buy a large radio?

Yes, she wanted to buy a big one.

No, she didn't want to.

What kind of radio did she want to buy?

She wanted a small one.

Did she look at all kinds of radios?

Yes, she looked at all kinds.

No, she didn't.

Who looked at all kinds of radios?

Robert looked at everything.

Did the transistors cost a lot of money?

Yes, they cost a lot.

No, they didn't cost too much.

How much did the transistors cost?

They cost twenty dollars.

Did Mary decide on a radio-phonograph?

Yes, she decided on one.

No, she didn't decide to buy one.

What did she decide upon?

She decided to buy a table radio.

Did Mary think the radio cheap?

Yes, she thought it a bargain.

No, she didn't think so.

What did she think about the radio?

She thought it was a bargain.

Did she listen to many radios?  
 Yes, she listened to a lot.  
 No, she didn't listen to many.  
 Who listened to a lot of radios?  
 Alice listened, but she didn't buy any.

Did we have much money for a radio?  
 Yes, we had a lot of money.  
 No, we didn't have much.  
 How much money did we have?  
 Twenty dollars.

Listen to these questions using question words. Repeat the questions and answers.

Who bought a radio?  
 Alice bought one.  
 Where did she buy it?  
 She got it in a department store.  
 What kind of radio did she buy?  
 She bought a transistor radio.  
 How much money did she pay?  
 She paid twenty dollars for it.  
 What did she think about that?  
 She thought that was a bargain.

Here are some statements using the progressive verb forms.

Listen and then repeat what you hear.

We're sitting in our classroom now.  
 The students are talking English.  
 The teacher is listening to us.  
 He isn't talking very much.  
 The teacher is asking us questions.  
 We're trying to answer him.  
 One student is talking about his country.  
 He's telling us many interesting things.  
 We're asking him questions about his country.  
 The teacher is listening and not talking.  
 Another student is telling us about his family.  
 They're living in a small village.  
 They're raising fruits and vegetables.  
 They're also growing trees on their farm.  
 He's buying more land now.  
 A student is telling us about making boats.  
 Another is speaking about making rugs.  
 We're enjoying the English class very much.

Here are some sentences using common verbs. Listen to the sentences and repeat them

Does he hear a plane?

Yes, he hears a plane.

No, he doesn't hear a plane.

Who hears a plane?

What does he hear?

Are you listening to the radio?

Yes, we're listening to the radio.

No, we aren't listening to the radio.

Who is listening to the radio?

We are listening to a recorder.

What are you listening to?

Do they see my new car?

Yes, they see your new car.

No, they don't see your new car.

Who sees my new car?

What do they see?

Is Alice watching TV?

Yes, she's watching TV.

No, she isn't watching it now.

Who is watching TV?

What is she watching?

We'll now practice some questions and answers. Listen and repeat what you hear.

What did Robert do yesterday?

He listened to the tape.

What is Mary doing now?

She's reading a book.

What do you do every morning?

I always eat breakfast.

What will the students do soon?

They will speak good English soon.

What has the boy already done?

He has already eaten supper.

What were you doing when the phone rang?

We were watching television.

What did Mary do in the department store?

She bought a portable radio.

What is she doing with the radio now?  
She's listening to music on the radio.

What does his wife do when she goes to the store?  
She always looks for bargains.

Where can one find bargains?  
One can find them in a department store.

What can you buy in a department store?  
You can buy everything there.

What did Alice buy downtown?  
She bought a transistor radio.

What do you need to buy?  
I need to buy a shirt.

Where will you go to buy one?  
I'll go to a department store.

What took place while watching TV?  
The telephone rang.

What happened while you were eating?  
We heard a loud noise.

Where did Robert get on the train?  
He got on at Tucson.

Where will Janie get off the boat?  
She will get off at Liverpool.

Who can make up his mind about going?  
We can; and we must do so now.

What do you want us to try on?  
We want you to try on the new coat.

What did Robert put on for the party?  
He put on his dark suit and white shirt.

Where shall we have our next dance?  
Let's have it in the Blue Room.

Who could we get to play for us?  
We could afford The Stafford Band.

Who hasn't made up his mind yet?  
Everybody has made up his mind.

## TAPE 1204C

Listen to the following sentences and then repeat them.

Where is the traffic light?

Generally above the street.  
Sometimes on the corner.  
Look carefully.

I see it now.  
What does the red light mean?

The red light always means "stop."  
Traffic never moves.

Does the green light mean "go"?

Right. Do you understand the yellow light?

No. The one ahead is blinking.  
What does it mean?

A blinking yellow light means "move."  
But use caution.

Suppose a red light changes to yellow.  
What do I do?

Don't move.  
Wait until the light is green.

Suppose a green light is changing.  
Should traffic move?

No, it should stop.

We'll now practice the use of some modals. Listen to these sentences and then repeat.

Can shows ability and permission.  
Can't shows inability and no permission.

I can go to New York.  
It doesn't take long.

I can't go to San Francisco.  
It's a long way.

He can go by car.  
He has a car.  
He can't go by car.  
He doesn't have a car.

They can go on Christmas.  
It's a holiday.

They can't go today.  
Today isn't a holiday.



May shows a request and possibility.

May I speak to Joe?  
 May I go now?  
 May we leave early?

It may rain. It's cloudy.  
 I may buy a new suit.  
 I need one.  
 We may visit the West.  
 We hope to.

Will often shows the future.

When will Joe be there?  
 Will they fly across the country?  
 Will she need a cab?  
 He won't get up at seven-thirty.  
 It won't stop here.

"I will" often means a promise.

I will call in the morning.  
 I promise.  
 I'll write you often. I promise.

Would may show a condition.

He would study more (if he had time).  
 He would buy a car (if he had the money).

Would not or wouldn't shows a negative attitude.

They wouldn't speak English on their "break."  
 They spoke their own language.  
 The car wouldn't go.  
 It was out of gas.

He wouldn't study.  
 He didn't like to study.

Should shows obligation and necessity.

You should study.  
 He should get up early.  
 We should listen carefully.

Should not or shouldn't expresses the negative.

You shouldn't "run" a red light.  
 You shouldn't speed.  
 You shouldn't go late.

Should + a question is a request for advice.

Should I buy a car?  
 Should we wait here?  
 Should he go now or later?  
 What should I wear, my uniform or a civilian suit?

Must shows necessity.

They must report at once.  
He must get a driver's license.  
He can't drive without a license.  
You must wear your dress uniform.

Must not expresses the negative.

You must not drive eighty miles an hour.  
The speed limit is seventy.  
He must not smoke in the lab.

Now let's practice some sentences using modals. Listen and repeat.

- I should go downtown today.
- You shouldn't drive the car so fast.
- Should John watch TV every night?
- Who should take a bath first?
- What should we do now?
- What should we study tomorrow?
- Who should we give the chocolate to?
- Where should they go next year?
- How should we learn the new words?
- When should we go to the U. S. A. ?
- How often should we listen to the tape?
- Why should you say that?
- Mary can sing well.
- Could you let me have five dollars?
- I can let you have five until payday.
- Will we see you at the movies?
- Would you please help me?
- You may go now, if you want to.
- What places may we visit in the U. S. A. ?

**Who might visit Yellowstone Park?**

**Should we listen to the tape again?**

**Yes, you ought to listen and repeat once more.**

**Must you leave us so soon?**

**We must go to church today.**

**The students should study hard.**

**They ought to study hard.**

**They need to study hard.**

**They have to study hard.**

**They expect to study hard.**

**They want to study hard.**

**Who will be here early tomorrow?**

**Who can be here early tomorrow?**

**Who must be here early tomorrow?**

**Who might be here early tomorrow?**

**Who should be here early tomorrow?**

**Who could be here early tomorrow?**

**We may visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We might visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We can visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We could visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We must visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We ought to visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We expect to visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We plan to visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We have to visit the U. S. A. next year.**

**We need to visit the U. S. A. next year.**

## SOUND AND INTONATION

Listen.

Remember that we don't stress an auxiliary verb in affirmative and interrogative sentences, but we stress it in a negative sentence.

Listen and repeat.

I can gó.  
Can I gó?  
I cán't go.

He can speák English.  
Can he speák English?  
He cán't speak English.

She can leárn fast.  
Can she leárn fast?  
She cán't learn fast.

They will gó.  
Will they gó?  
They wón't go.

The bus will leáve at noon.  
Will the bus leáve at noon?  
The bus wón't leave at noon.

He would cóme.  
Would he cóme?  
He wóuldn't come.

She should cóme.  
Should she cóme?  
She shóuldn't come.

We must húrry.  
Must we húrry?  
We mústn't hurry.

The difference between / l / and / r /

Listen.

It is sometimes difficult to distinguish between / l / and / r /.

Remember that to form / l / the tongue tip touches the tooth ridge and air goes out over the sides of the tongue.

To form / r / the sides of the tongue touch the tooth ridge and the air goes out over the middle and tip of the tongue.

Listen and repeat.

red  
red  
red

led  
led  
led

grass  
grass  
grass

glass  
glass  
glass

**OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES****Structures****Question Words****Adjectives, Comparison of****Adverbs of Frequency****Progressive Verb Phrase****Present Tense****Past Tense****Future Tense****Sound and Intonation****Intonation Patterns in Questions****Stressed and Unstressed Vowels**

Making An Appointment With A Dentist



## UNIT 1205

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

## Telephone Calls - Making An Appointment With A Dentist

Miss A: Dr. Parks' office.

Mr. B: This is George Jones speaking. I want to make an appointment with Dr. Parks some time this week.

Miss A: Is something wrong, or is this a checkup?

Mr. B: Just my regular six months' checkup.

Miss A: Let's make it next week, then. Dr. Parks is busy all this week. How about Friday, November 5, at 10 o'clock?

Mr. B: That will be fine.

Miss A: May I have your name again, please?  
Mr. Jones, wasn't it?

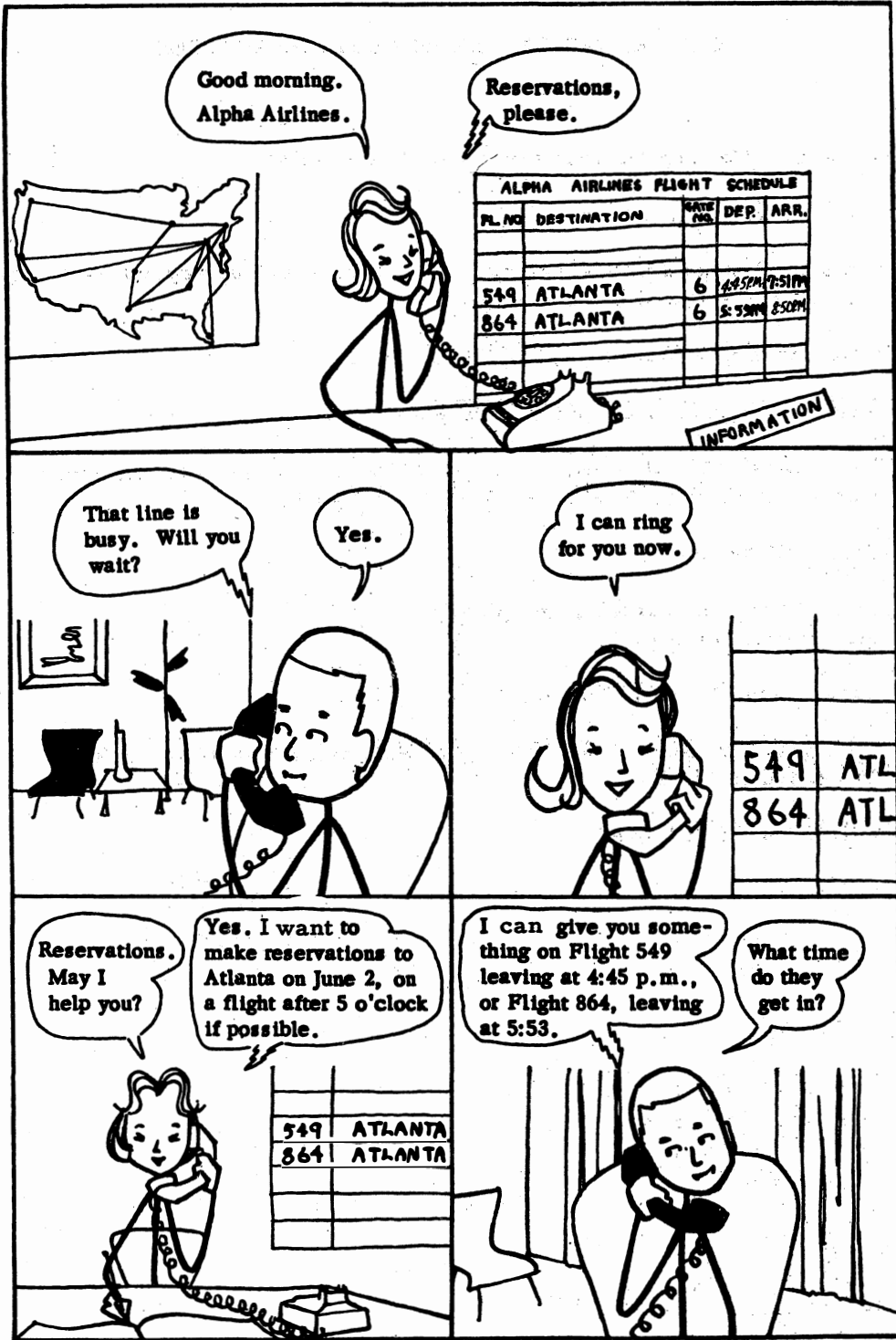
Mr. B: That's right. George Jones.

Miss A: All right, Mr. Jones. We'll see you November 5 at 10 o'clock.  
Thank you for calling.

Mr. B: Thank you. Good-bye.



Making Plane Reservations



Flight 549 is due in Atlanta at 7:51 p.m., and Flight 864 at 8:50 p.m.

Do they serve dinner on both flights?

Yes, sir.

I'll take the earlier one, then.

ALPHA AIRLINES FLIGHTS		
FL. NO.	DESTINATION	CLASS
549	ATLANTA	6
864	ATLANTA	6

Flight 549. All right, sir. Do you wish a return reservation?

No, one-way..

That's a party of one?

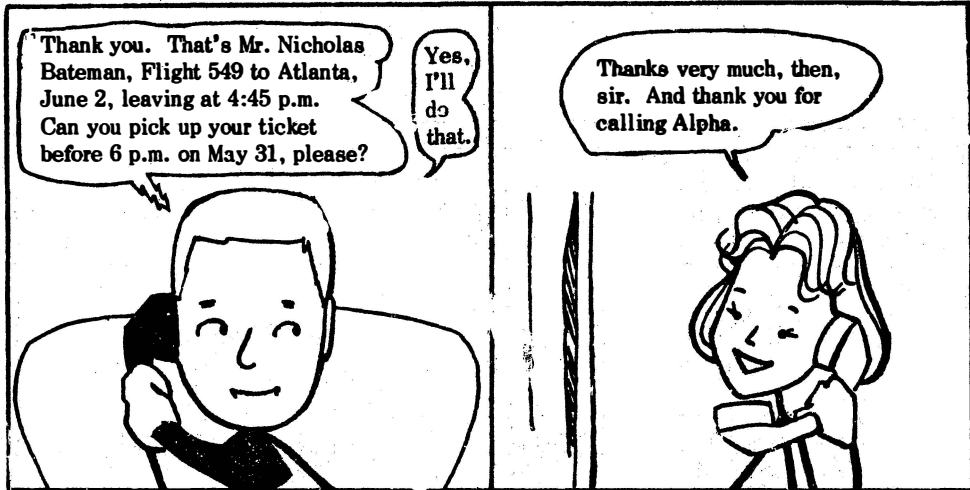
Yes.

May I have your name, please?

Nicholas Bateman.

And the telephone where we can reach you during the day?

Lincoln 7-7200, extension 245.



## Dialog

A: Good morning. Alpha Airlines.

B: Reservations, please.

A: That line is busy. Will you wait?

B: Yes.

A: I can ring for you now.

C: Reservations. May I help you?

B: Yes, I want to make reservations to Atlanta on June 2,  
on a flight after 5 o'clock if possible.

C: I can give you something on Flight 549 leaving at 4:45 p.m., or Flight 864,  
leaving at 5:53.

B: What time do they get in?

C: Flight 549 is due in Atlanta at 7:51 p.m., and Flight 864 at 8:50 p.m.

B: Do they serve dinner on both flights?

C: Yes, sir.

B: I'll take the earlier one, then.

C: Flight 549. All right, sir. Do you wish a return reservation?

B: No, one-way.

C: That's a party of one?

B: Yes.

C: May I have your name, please?

B: Nicholas Bateman.

C: And the telephone where we can reach you during the day?

B: Lincoln 7-7200.

C: Thank you. That's Mr. Nicholas Bateman, Flight 549 to Atlanta, June 2,  
leaving at 4:45 p.m. Can you pick up your ticket before 6 p.m. on May 31, please?

B: Yes, I'll do that.

C: Thanks very much, then, sir. And thank you for calling Alpha.

## Reading

### The Telephone

The telephone is important to Americans both for business and for personal reasons. With the telephone you can get in touch with people quickly, whether they are in the city or across the continent. The business world of today could hardly live without the telephone. Personal telephone calls are very important, too. You can often call up a friend or relative and have a pleasant talk, when you can not visit in person.

In most parts of the United States there are dial phones. This means that you look up the number you want to call and then dial it. In parts of the country where they don't have dial phones yet, you look up the number you want to call, pick up the phone, and, when the operator answers, tell her the number you want.

Calls to a person in the same city are local calls. Calls made from one city to another are long-distance calls. There are two kinds of long-distance calls: person-to-person and station-to-station. When you want to speak to one particular person, you make a person-to-person call. You tell the operator the name of the person you want to get in touch with. When you want to speak to anyone who answers the telephone, you just give the operator the name of the city and the phone number. A person-to-person call costs more than a station-to-station call. The basic charge for the first three minutes of a long-distance call depends on the distance. For example it costs more to make a call from New York to Los Angeles than it does to make a call from New York to Washington. After the first three minutes, an additional amount is charged for each minute.

If you have a telephone in your home, the telephone company sends a monthly bill. This is one basic charge, plus the charges for any long-distance calls made during the month. If you make a telephone call from a public telephone, or telephone booth, a local call costs ten cents.

**NOTE:** We see many long sentences in this reading. It is not always possible to speak and write in short sentences. The long sentences are short statements connected with each other to better express an idea. They will not be difficult for us to understand if we look at them one part at a time.

### New Vocabulary

important  
business  
kind (n.)  
amount  
operator  
monthly  
bill

telephone booth  
public telephone  
in person  
look up  
call up  
get in touch with = communicate with  
long-distance calls  
local calls  
pick up the phone  
person-to-person call  
station-to-station call  
phone  
telephone  
hardly

reasonable  
 rates  
 dial  
 relative  
 particular  
 basic  
 additional

### Pattern Practice

#### For Study and Drill

1. the telephone  
 The telephone is important.  
 The telephone is important in the world today.
2. get in touch with  
 Be sure to get in touch with me.  
 I'm trying to get in touch with Mr. Jones.  
 Did he get in touch with you?
3. call up  
 Call up Mr. Jones before you go home.  
 Mary called me up yesterday.  
 I called John up last night.
4. dial  
 I'm dialing the number.  
 He dialed the wrong number.  
 You dial "0" to call the operator.
5. look up  
 Look up the number you want.  
 Look up the number you want to call.  
 Look the word up in the dictionary.
6. pick up  
 Pick up the phone.  
 Pick up the phone and dial the number.  
 He picked the pencil up.
7. long-distance call  
 I want to make a long-distance call.  
 Does it cost much to make a long-distance call?  
 He called her long-distance last night.
8. person-to-person  
 This is a person-to-person call.  
 He made a person-to-person call.  
 It costs more to make a person-to-person call.

9. station-to-station  
Are you calling station-to-station?  
This is a station-to-station call.  
It costs less to make a station-to-station call.
10. public telephone  
There's a public telephone at the drugstore.  
I can make a phone call from that public telephone.  
We often use a public telephone.
11. telephone booth  
There's a telephone booth in the hall.  
Here's a telephone booth. You can make your call from here.  
Somebody's using the telephone booth.

### Vocabulary Practice

Be sure you understand the meaning of new words.

1. important  
This is an important meeting.  
The meeting today is more important than the one yesterday.  
This is the most important meeting of all.
2. business  
How's business?  
Business is not so good this year.  
Business is better this year than it was last year.
3. kind (n.)  
What kind of suit do you want?  
What kind of book was he looking for?  
I don't like this kind of paper.  
He's the kind of man who will always help you.
4. amount (n.)  
That's a large amount of money.  
We pay the telephone company the same amount every month.  
They have a large amount of money in the bank.
5. monthly  
This magazine appears monthly.  
They send us a monthly bill.  
We pay the bill monthly.
6. bill  
Please send me the bill.  
How much is my bill?  
We had more bills than usual this month.
7. phone  
May I use your phone?  
Where's the phone?  
There isn't a phone here.  
They have two phones.

8. hardly  
I have hardly any free time today.  
I can hardly hear you.  
There's hardly any rain in July.
9. relative (n.)  
He is a relative of mine.  
Most of my relatives live in New York.  
Is John a friend or relative of yours?
10. particular  
Did you have in mind any particular color?  
If you want to speak to one particular person, call person-to-person.  
This automobile company doesn't have the particular car I wanted.  
What particular kind of car were you thinking of?
11. rates  
What are the rates in that hotel?  
Are the rates for long-distance phone calls very high?  
The rates in this hotel are \$6.00 a day.  
The rates on long distance calls are cheaper after six.
12. reasonable  
The price is very reasonable.  
Long-distance rates are very reasonable.  
This hotel has reasonable rates.  
The food in this restaurant is good, and the rates are reasonable.
13. basic  
Learn the basic facts.  
The basic charge for our telephone is \$6.00 a month.  
If you want to study engineering, mathematics is basic.
14. additional  
Is there an additional charge for having the trousers fixed?  
On planes, there is no additional charge for food.  
There is a basic rate for a three-minute long-distance telephone call,  
and an additional charge for each minute after that.
15. local call  
It costs a dime to make a local call from a phone booth.  
How many local calls do you make every day?  
I know how to make a local call, but I don't know how to make a long-  
distance call.
16. operator  
Call the operator, please.  
Tell the operator who you want to call.  
What did the operator tell you?

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## 1. Review of Question Words

The usual question words are when, where, how, why, what, who, and which. Remember that the regular question pattern is: Auxiliary + Subject + Main Verb.

Do you understand?  
 Did he understand?  
 Will he understand?

When you use question words you use the regular question word order after the question word.

When did he leave?  
 Where is he going?  
 How does he do it?  
 Why did he call you?  
 What is she studying?  
 Who does Mr. Brown teach?  
 Which book are you reading?

## Exercise

Place the correct question words in the blanks.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ does John study? At night.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ does Mary study? In her room.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is your friend studying? English.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ do they usually study? Three hours.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ do Bob and Dave study English? They need to speak English.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ does that boy study with? His friend.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ lesson did they study last night? The sixth lesson.

## 2. Review of the Comparison of Adjectives

Note the following constructions.

1. He is as tall as his friend.  
 He is taller than his friend.
2. My coat is as long as yours.  
 My coat is longer than yours.
3. His apartment is not as large as mine.  
 His apartment is not larger than mine.
4. It's as hot as it was yesterday.  
 It's hotter than it was yesterday.



5. This lesson is as difficult as the last one.  
This lesson is more difficult than the last one.
6. Is their house as expensive as our house?  
Is their house more expensive than our house?
7. This pen is like that one.  
These two pens are alike.
8. Isn't this house different from that one?  
Aren't these two houses different?
9. This book seems to be similar to mine.  
These two books seem to be similar.
10. His car looks like yours.  
The two cars look alike.

Review of Adverbs of Frequency

Review these adverbs of frequency and their position in the sentence:

—————→	always	—————→	usually
—————→	sometimes	—————→	ever
—————→	often	—————→	never

Statements

ALWAYS I always go.	I don't always go.
SOMETIMES You sometimes go.	- - - - -
OFTEN You often go.	We don't often go.
USUALLY He usually goes.	They don't usually go.
EVER - - - - -	He doesn't ever go.
NEVER They never go.	- - - - -

Questions

ALWAYS Do I always go?	Don't I always go?
SOMETIMES Do we sometimes go?	Don't we sometimes go?
OFTEN Do we often go?	Don't we often go?
USUALLY Does he usually go?	Doesn't he usually go?
EVER Do I ever go?	Don't I ever go?
NEVER Do they never go?	- - - - -

As you see, the regular position for adverbs of frequency is before the main verb. But notice that they follow the verb Be.

Statements

ALWAYS I'm always late.	I'm not always late.
SOMETIMES You're sometimes late.	- - - - -
OFTEN We're often late.	We're not often late.
USUALLY They're usually late.	They're not usually late.
EVER - - - - -	We're not ever late.
NEVER I'm never late.	- - - - -

## Questions

ALWAYS Am I always late?  
 SOMETIMES Are you sometimes  
 late?  
 OFTEN Is he often late?  
 USUALLY Is she usually late?  
 EVER Are we ever late?  
 NEVER Am I never late?

Isn't he always late?  
 Aren't you sometimes late?  
 Isn't he often late?  
 Isn't she usually late?  
 Aren't they ever late?  
 - - - - -

## Review of Adverbs

1. The newspaper is	<u>always</u>	big.
2. The lessons are	<u>usually</u>	easy.
3. I am	<u>often</u>	in school.
4. You are	<u>never</u>	here.
5. They are	<u>always</u>	in class.
6. Is the newspaper	<u>always</u>	big?
7. Are the lessons	<u>usually</u>	easy?
8. Am I	<u>often</u>	in school?
9. Are you	<u>ever</u>	here?
10. Are they	<u>always</u>	in class?
11. The newspaper isn't	<u>always</u>	big.
12. The lessons aren't	<u>usually</u>	easy.
13. I'm not	<u>often</u>	in school.
14. You aren't	<u>ever</u>	here.
15. They aren't	<u>always</u>	in class.

## Exercise

Use the frequency word in the correct position.

- (ever) Are the banks open on Sunday?  
 Are the banks ever open on Sunday?
- (often) We study at night.
- (never) They write letters in class.
- (usually) Do you eat lunch in the restaurant?
- (ever) I don't study on Sunday.
- (often) The doctors are busy.
- (usually) Is the bus crowded?
- (never) I have time to read the newspaper.
- (ever) Do your friends visit you?
- (often) Is the weather warm in the spring?

## 4. Review of Progressive Verb Phrases (Present and Past Tense)

## Affirmative Statements

Subject + Verb Be + -ing form

I'm going.

I was going.

You're going.

You were going.

He, she, it is going.

He, she, it was going.

We're going.

We were going.

They're going.

They were going.

## Negative Statements

Subject + Verb Be + not + -ing form

I'm not going.

I wasn't going.

You're not going.

You weren't going.

He, she, it is not going.

He, she, it wasn't going.

We're not going.

We weren't going.

They're not going.

They weren't going.

## Affirmative Questions

Verb Be + Subject + -ing form

Am I going?

Was I going?

Are you going?

Were you going?

Is he, she, it going?

Was he, she, it going?

Are we going?

Were we going?

Are they going?

Were they going?

## Negative Questions

### Verb Be + Not + Subject + -ing form

(Not usually used in first person singular.)

Aren't you going?

Weren't you going?

Isn't he, she, it going?

Wasn't he, she, it going?

Aren't we going?

Weren't we going?

Aren't they going?

Weren't they going?

### Examples:

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I'm drinking a coke.               | I was drinking a coke.               |
| 2. He's smoking a cigarette.          | He was smoking a cigarette.          |
| 3. We're looking for a parking place. | We were looking for a parking place. |
| 4. They're making a telephone call.   | They were making a telephone call.   |
| 5. Are you using this book?           | Were you using this book?            |
| 6. Is he fixing your watch?           | Was he fixing your watch?            |
| 7. Are they coming to dinner?         | Were they coming to dinner?          |
| 8. Am I going north?                  | Was I going north?                   |
| 9. I'm not watching television.       | I wasn't watching television.        |
| 10. He's not coming home.             | He wasn't coming home.               |
| 11. We aren't playing tennis today.   | We weren't playing tennis today.     |
| 12. They aren't going to New York.    | They weren't going to New York.      |
| 13. Aren't you coming home with us?   | Weren't you coming home with us?     |

### Exercise

Change the following sentences to the present and past progressive verb phrases. Use the appropriate time adverb instead of the time or frequency expression in the first sentence.

Examples: They ride the bus every day.  
They are riding the bus now.  
They were riding the bus yesterday.

I study at night.  
I am studying now.  
I was studying last night.

- Do you often go to movies?
- She doesn't work at night.
- The boys go to school every day.
- Does the teacher always teach in the morning?
- The students don't study on weekends.

6. She works every day.
7. They take a vacation every summer.
8. We listen to new tapes in the morning.
9. They read every morning.
10. They walk to school every morning.

## 5. Review of the Future Tense

Remember that in modern American English we usually form the future tense with Will plus the simple form of the verb.

He will come tomorrow.  
 I will read the book tonight.  
 They will see us next week.

In conversations we usually use the contracted forms.

He'll come tomorrow.  
 I'll read the book tonight.  
 They'll see us next week.

We put not after the will to make a negative statement.

He will not come tomorrow.  
 He won't come tomorrow.

I will not read the book tonight.  
 I won't read the book tonight.

They will not see us next week.  
 They won't see us next week.

(Note: Won't is the contraction for will not.)

We place will before the subject to make a question.

Will he come tomorrow?  
 Will I read the book tonight?  
 Will they see us next week?

Study the following sentences:

1. Will you call Dr. Parks?  
 Yes, I will.  
 No, I won't.
2. Will you come next week?  
 Yes, I'll come next week.  
 No, I won't come next week.

3. Won't that be all right?  
Yes, it will.  
No, it won't.
4. Will you please give me your name?  
Yes, I will.  
No, I won't.
5. Will we see you in November?  
Yes, I'll see you November 5.  
No, I won't see you in November.
6. Will I arrive before 9:00?  
Yes, you'll arrive at 8:50.  
No, you will not arrive before 9:00
7. Will they serve dinner on the plane?  
Yes, they'll serve dinner at 6:00.  
No, they won't serve dinner on this flight.
8. I'll wait for you.  
Will you wait for me?  
Won't you wait for me?
9. I'll take the earlier one.  
Will you take the earlier one?  
Won't you take the earlier one?
10. Will you call me later?  
Yes, I'll call you later.  
No I won't call you later.

## TAPE 1205A

Listen to this telephone conversation about plane reservations.

A: Good morning. Alpha Airlines.

B: Reservations, please.

A: That line is busy.

Will you wait?

B: Yes.

A: I can ring for you now.

C: Reservations. May I help you?

B: Yes, I want to make reservations to Atlanta.

I want a flight after 5 o'clock if possible.

C: I can give you something on Flight 549.

It is leaving at 4:45 p. m.

There is also Flight 864.

It is leaving at 5:53.

B: What time do they get in?

C: Flight 549 is due in Atlanta at 7:51.

Flight 864 arrives at 8:50.

B: Do they serve dinner on both flights?

C: Yes, sir.

B: I'll take the earlier one, then.

C: Flight 549. All right, sir.

Do you wish a return reservation?

B: No, one way.

C: That's a party of one.

B: Yes.

C: May I have your name, please?

B: Nicholas Bateman.

C: Where can we reach you during the day?

B: Lincoln 7-7200, extension 245.

C: Thank you. That's Mr. Nicholas Bateman.

You're taking Flight 549 to Atlanta.

The plane leaves at 4:45 p. m.

Can you pick up your ticket before six?

B: Yes, I'll do that.

C: Thanks very much, sir.

And thank you for calling Alpha.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Let's practice some new vocabulary from this unit. Listen and repeat.

busy (in use)

Is your line always busy?  
This line is hard to get,  
it is usually busy.  
I tried to call you,  
but the line was busy.

ring (call up)

You can ring me any time.  
I'll ring the office for you.  
When should I ring you?

due

This flight is due at 9:55.  
When are we due to arrive?  
They were due two hours ago.

party (group)

I want reservations for a party of four.  
How many are in your party?  
A party of three is waiting for you.

reach (speak to)

I'll need to reach you sometime today.  
Where can we reach you by telephone?  
Can he reach you at this address?

Let's review the use of question words. First repeat some common question words.

when  
why  
which

where  
what

how  
who

Now we'll use these words in sentences and repeat them.

Where is Mr. Bateman going?  
Mr Bateman is going to Atlanta.

When is he going to Atlanta?  
He is going to Atlanta tomorrow.

Why does she want his telephone number?  
She may need to reach him.

How is Mr. Bateman going to Atlanta?  
He is going to Atlanta by plane.



What do I need to travel by plane?  
I need a reservation and a ticket.

Who is flying to Atlanta?  
Mr. Bateman is flying to Atlanta.

Which flight is he taking?  
He is taking flight 549.

Now we'll review the comparison of adjectives. Listen to the following sentences and then repeat them.

That line is busy.  
This line is busier than that one.  
That line is not as busy as this one.

Going by plane is expensive.  
Going by plane is more expensive than going by bus.  
Going by bus is not as expensive as going by plane.  
Going by bus is less expensive than going by plane.

My book is difficult. Her book is also difficult.  
My book is not more difficult than hers.  
Her book is as difficult as mine.  
Our books are about the same.

Bob's car is blue. Bill's car is red.  
The colors of the cars are different.  
Bob's car is different from Bill's.  
The colors of the cars are not the same.

These two lessons seem to be similar.  
This lesson is similar to that one.  
That lesson is like this one.

The two brothers are six feet tall.  
One brother is not taller than the other.  
The two brothers look alike.  
The one brother is like the other one.

Your child and his child are the same age.  
Is his child older than yours?  
Are these children the same age?  
Isn't your child as old as his?

My friend and I both weigh 150 pounds.  
My friend and I weigh the same.  
I am as heavy as my friend.  
My friend is not heavier than I am.

Our classes last 45 minutes, Their classes last 60 minutes.  
Their classes are longer than ours.  
Our classes are not as long as theirs.  
All the classes are not the same.

We'll now practice some sentences using adverbs. Listen and repeat.

Do you always fly when you travel?  
No, I never fly when I travel.  
Yes, I usually fly when I travel.

Don't I usually prepare my lesson?  
You sometimes prepare your lesson.  
You don't ever prepare your lesson.

Do they often go to class?  
Yes, they usually go to class.  
They sometimes go to class.

I'm not always late.  
I'm never late.  
I'm not ever late.  
They're often late.

Did they usually make reservations?  
Bill always made reservations.  
John never made reservations.  
Bob sometimes made reservations.  
Nick often made reservations.

Do we ever use the telephone?  
I never use the telephone.  
My friends often use the telephone.  
My sister always uses the telephone.

Is he usually at work on Friday?  
He is always at work on Friday.  
They are never at work on Friday.  
He is never at work on Friday.

Do they usually study their books?  
They sometimes study their books.  
They always study their books.  
They never study their books.  
They don't ever study their books.

Listen carefully to the following sentences. Remember what you hear. After we read the sentences we'll ask some questions about them. You will answer the questions.

Mr. Bateman wants to fly to Atlanta. He plans to make the trip next week. He calls Alpha Airlines to make reservations. The flight takes about three and a half hours.

Now let's repeat these sentences.

Mr. Bateman wants to fly to Atlanta.  
 He plans to make the trip next week.  
 He calls Alpha Airlines to make reservations.  
 The flight takes about three and a half hours.

We'll now ask some questions about these sentences. Please answer these questions with complete sentences and then repeat the correct answer.

Who wants to go to Atlanta?

Mr. Bateman wants to go to Atlanta.

Where does Mr. Bateman want to go?

Mr. Bateman wants to go to Atlanta.

How does Mr. Bateman want to go?

Mr. Bateman wants to fly.

When does he plan to make the trip?

He plans to make the trip next week.

Which airlines does he call?

He calls Alpha Airlines.

Why does he call the airline?

He wants to make reservations.

How long is the flight to Atlanta?

The flight takes about three and a half hours.

## TAPE 1205B

Listen to the following conversation about telephones. You will hear some long sentences. Remember these long sentences are only some short statements connected with each other. They will be easy to understand if you take just one part at a time.

- A. May I use your telephone?  
I would like to call up a friend.
- B. Certainly, you may use it any time.
- A. How do you make a call on this telephone?  
I don't know how to use it.
- B. This is a dial telephone.  
You first look up the number you want to call,  
then you dial the number.
- A. Are all telephones dial telephones?
- B. Most phones here are dial phones.  
But some places don't have them.  
In these places we just pick up the phone.  
Then we give the operator the number.
- A. I see that most families have telephones.  
Why are they so important?
- B. We use them in business.  
Also, we often call up our friends  
when we can't visit them.
- A. The telephone in your home must be expensive.  
How do you know what to pay?
- B. The telephone company sends a bill each month.  
There is one basic charge.  
You pay more for long-distance calls.
- A. Are there any public telephones here?
- B. Yes, we can call from public telephones.  
City calls cost ten cents.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Vocabulary practice. Listen to the following words and expressions and then repeat them.

the telephone

The telephone is important.  
We use the telephone in business.  
We talk to our friends on the telephone.

call (up)

Call Mr. Jones before you go home.  
She called me up last week.  
I'll call John tomorrow.

dial

I'm dialing your number.  
He was dialing my number when I came in.  
You dial "0" to call the operator.

look up

look up the number you want.  
Is this the number you looked up?  
Are you looking up his number now?

pick up

Pick up the phone.  
He was just picking up the phone.  
We'll pick up your books for you.

public telephone

There is a public telephone in the drugstore.  
I often use a public telephone.  
It costs ten cents to use a public telephone.

operator

Call the operator, please.  
Tell the operator whom you want to call.  
What did the operator tell you?

important

This is an important call.  
I must speak to you, it is important.  
This is more important than that.

business

How's business?  
Business is good this year.  
Business was better last year.

basic

Learn the basic facts.  
The basic charge is \$5.00 a month.  
Mathematics is basic, if you study engineering.

Here is a pattern practice. Listen and repeat.

look up the number  
 you first look up the number  
 want to call  
 you want to call  
 You first look up the number you want to call.

operator answers  
 when the operator answers  
 give the number  
 we give her the number  
 When the operator answers we give her the number.

see  
 I see  
 have telephones  
 the families have telephones  
 I see that the families have telephones.

call  
 we call our friends  
 can't visit  
 when we can't visit them  
 We call our friends when we can't visit them.

Let's now review some sentences using progressive verb forms. Listen and repeat.

I am using the telephone.  
 Am I using the telephone?  
 I was using the telephone.  
 Was I using the telephone?

Are you dialing the right number?  
 You are dialing the right number.  
 Were you dialing the right number?  
 You were dialing the right number.

Aren't they calling up a friend?  
 They aren't calling up a friend.  
 Weren't they calling up a friend?  
 They weren't calling up a friend.

He is just picking up the phone.  
 Is he just picking up the phone?  
 He was just picking up the phone.  
 Was he just picking up the phone?

We are using the phone.  
 Are we using the phone?  
 We were using the phone.  
 Were we using the phone?

Isn't John living in town now?  
 John isn't living in town now.  
 Wasn't John living in town last week?  
 John wasn't living in town last week.

Whose number are you looking up?  
 We're looking up the doctor's number.  
 Whose number were you looking up?  
 We were looking up the doctor's number.

Is the company sending you a bill?  
 The company is sending you a bill.  
 Was the company sending you a bill?  
 The company was sending you a bill.

Let's now practice changing the tense of some sentences. You will hear some sentences in the present tense. You will change them to the past tense and then repeat the correct responses.

Example: George Jones is speaking to Dr. Parks.  
 George Jones was speaking to Dr. Parks.  
 George Jones was speaking to Dr. Parks.

Mr. Jones is coming in the car.

Mr. Jones was coming in the car.

I'm waiting for the plane.

I was waiting for the plane.

We aren't planning to fly to Atlanta.

We weren't planning to fly to Atlanta.

Are they serving dinner during the flight?

Were they serving dinner during the flight?

She is making a reservation for you.

She was making a reservation for you.

Now let's change some sentences from the past tense to the present tense in the same way. When you hear the sentence in the past tense, change it to the present and then repeat the correct response.

I was taking the early flight.

I am taking the early flight.

We were just writing your name.

We are just writing your name.

When were you leaving for New York?

When are you leaving for New York?

They were arriving on time.

They are arriving on time.

Wasn't he going by air?

Isn't he going by air?



## TAPE 1205C

Listen to the following conversation about long-distance phone calls.

- A. I have a friend in San Francisco.  
Can I talk to him by telephone?
- B. That will be a long-distance call.  
Calls from one city to another are long-distance calls.  
Calls to persons in the same city are local calls.  
Long-distance calls are more expensive than local calls
- A. How much will it cost to telephone to San Francisco?
- B. The cost will depend on the kind of call you make,  
also on how far away the city is,  
and how long you talk.
- A. What kind of calls are there?
- B. There are person-to-person and station-to-station calls.  
If you want to speak to a particular person,  
you make a person-to-person call.  
If you will speak to anyone who answers,  
it is a station-to-station call.  
A person-to-person call is more expensive  
than a station-to-station call.
- A. How long can I talk?
- B. The basic charge is for three minutes.

Now we'll listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Here is a vocabulary drill. Listen and repeat.

long-distance call

A call to another city is a long-distance call.  
I wanted to make a long-distance call last night.  
Will it cost much to make a long-distance call?

person-to-person

This is a person-to-person call.  
Is this a person-to-person call?  
Person-to-person calls are expensive.

station-to-station calls

Are you calling station-to-station?  
Station-to-station calls at night are not expensive  
This is a station-to-station call.

local call

Will this be a local call?

Local calls are calls within the city.

Local calls are not expensive.

depend on

The cost depends on how long you talk.

Can I depend on you to do the work?

How you learn English depends on you.

particular

I want to speak to one particular person.

She has a particular color in mind.

You don't have the particular car I want.

Listen to the following questions and answers. Then repeat them.

Where will my friend be next week?

He'll be in San Francisco.

How can I talk to him?

You can call him on the telephone.

How far is San Francisco from Chicago?

It is about two thousand miles.

What kind of long-distance calls are most expensive?

Person-to-person calls are most expensive.

Do night calls cost the same as day calls?

No, it is cheaper to call at night.

How long can I talk for the basic charge?

You can talk three minutes.

What is a local call?

A local call is a call within the city.

What does a local call from a public telephone cost?

It costs ten cents.

Now let's practice forming the future tense. You will hear some sentences in other tenses. You will put these sentences in the future tense and then repeat the correct responses.

Example: I called my friend in San Francisco.  
I'll call my friend in San Francisco.  
I'll call my friend in San Francisco.

Jack is ringing his friend on the telephone.

Jack will ring his friend on the telephone.

We made reservations with the Alpha Airlines.

We'll make reservations with the Alpha Airlines.

When does this plane arrive in Chicago?

When will this plane arrive in Chicago?

They serve lunch on the plane.

They'll serve lunch on the plane.

Are you ever late for class?

Will you ever be late for class?

I always study my lesson.

I'll always study my lesson.

Our classes are longer than their classes.

Our classes will be longer than their classes.

I often get in touch with them.

I'll often get in touch with them.

Did you listen to the tape in lab?

Will you listen to the tape in lab?

Does John drive the car to town?

Will John drive the car to town?

Now let's listen to a telephone conversation between Mr. Jones and the girl in a dentist's office.

Miss A: Dr. Parks' office.

Mr. B: This is George Jones speaking.  
I want to make an appointment.  
Can I come some time this week?

Miss A: Is something wrong,  
or is this for a checkup?

Mr. B: Just my regular six months' checkup.

Miss A: Let's make it next week, then,-  
Dr. Parks is busy all this week.  
How about Friday, at 10 o'clock?

Mr. B: That will be fine.

Miss A: May I have your name again, please?  
Mr. Jones, wasn't it?

Mr. B: That's right. George Jones.

Miss A: All right, Mr. Jones.  
We'll see you Friday at 10 o'clock.  
Thank you for calling.

Mr. B: Thank you. Good-bye.

Now we'll listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Let's practice the new vocabulary. Listen and repeat.

appointment

I want to make an appointment with the dentist.  
You must have an appointment to see the doctor.  
He should get an appointment to talk to the commander.

checkup

Do you have your teeth checked regularly?  
Yes, I have a checkup every six months.  
We go to a doctor for a checkup once a year.

SOUND AND INTONATION

Listen.

We'll now practice some "Yes - No Questions."

Notice the intonation pattern.

Listen and repeat.

Did you study every day?

Does she come to school?

Will they go by bus?

Is this lesson one?

Are those your books?

Are you a student?

Can they read the lesson?

Does she hear the teacher?

Can he usually understand?

Is he writing a letter now?

Here are some questions with question words. Notice the intonation. Listen and repeat.

Where do you live?

How old are you?

What are you studying?

When is the next train to New York?

Which apartment will Mr. Porter live in?

Notice the difference in intonation in the following questions. Listen and repeat.

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Are you reading?                 | What are you reading?                |
| 2. Did she finish?                  | When did she finish?                 |
| 3. Is he going now?                 | Where is he going now?               |
| 4. Did John study?                  | How long did John study?             |
| 5. Does she go to school every day? | How does she go to school every day? |
| 6. Are they coming?                 | Why are they coming?                 |
| 7. Did Peter read?                  | Whose book did Peter read?           |
| 8. Do you ride every day?           | Which bus do you ride every day?     |
| 9. Will he write often?             | How often will he write?             |
| 10. Didn't they buy a red car?      | What color did they buy?             |

Listen. Remember that each word has one stressed vowel. The pronunciation of the remaining vowels is relatively unimportant. Listen and repeat.

l<sup>é</sup>sson  
st<sup>ú</sup>dent  
y<sup>é</sup>llow  
v<sup>í</sup>sit  
ton<sup>í</sup>ght

w<sup>r</sup>iting  
st<sup>á</sup>tion  
h<sup>ó</sup>lidays  
c<sup>á</sup>ll<sup>é</sup>d  
m<sup>ó</sup>vies

## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

Present Perfect Tense

Affirmative Statements

Negative Statements

Interrogative form

Modal Auxiliaries

Should/ought to

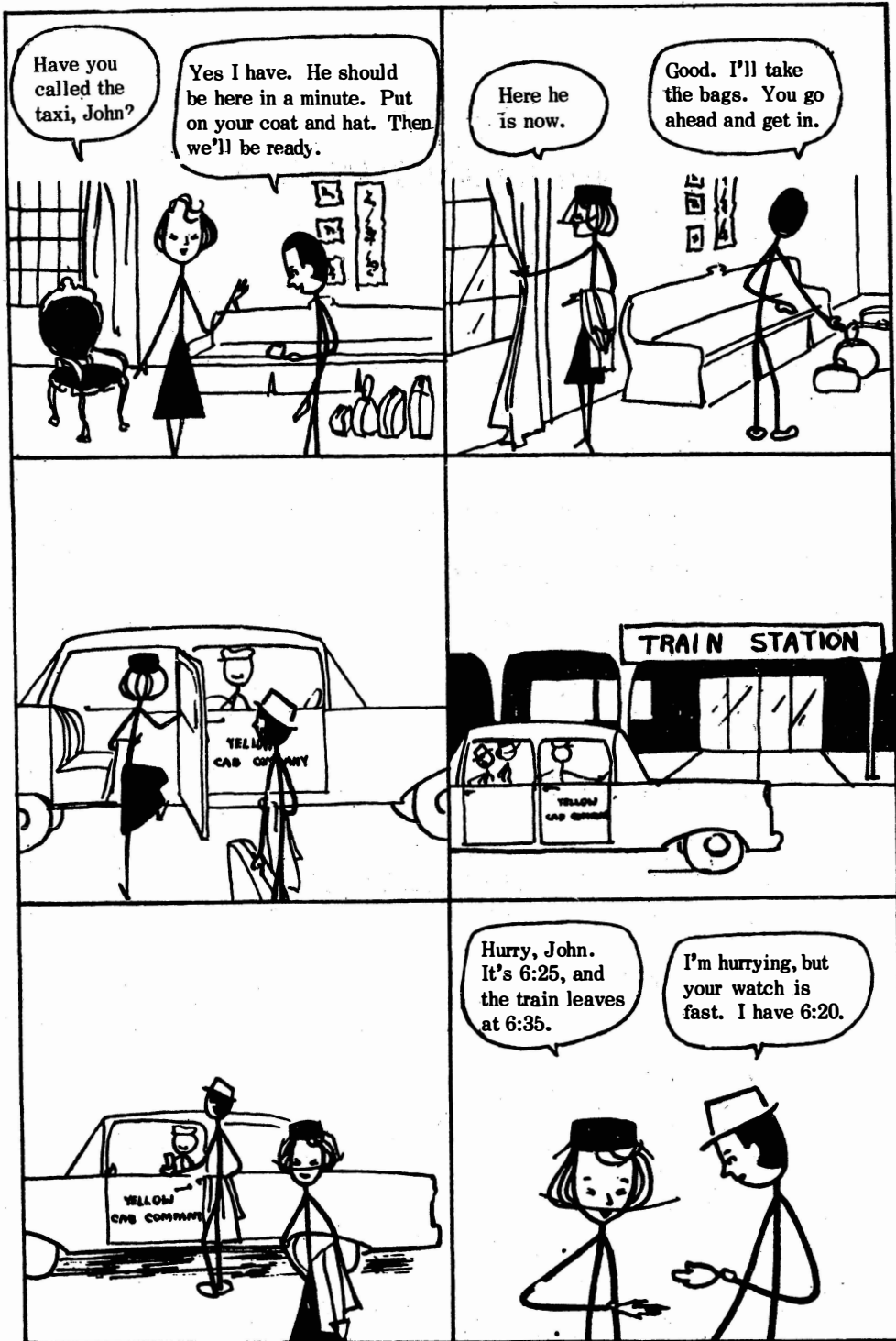
Irregular Verbs

Sound and Intonation

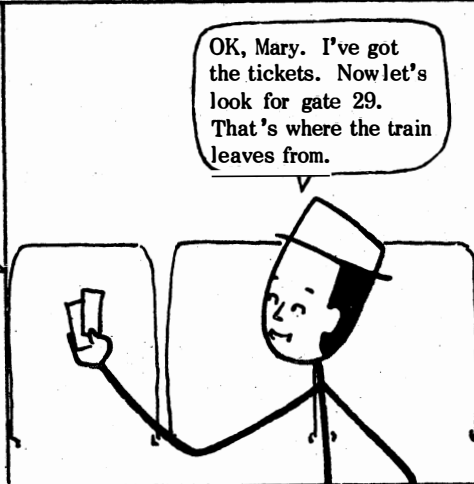
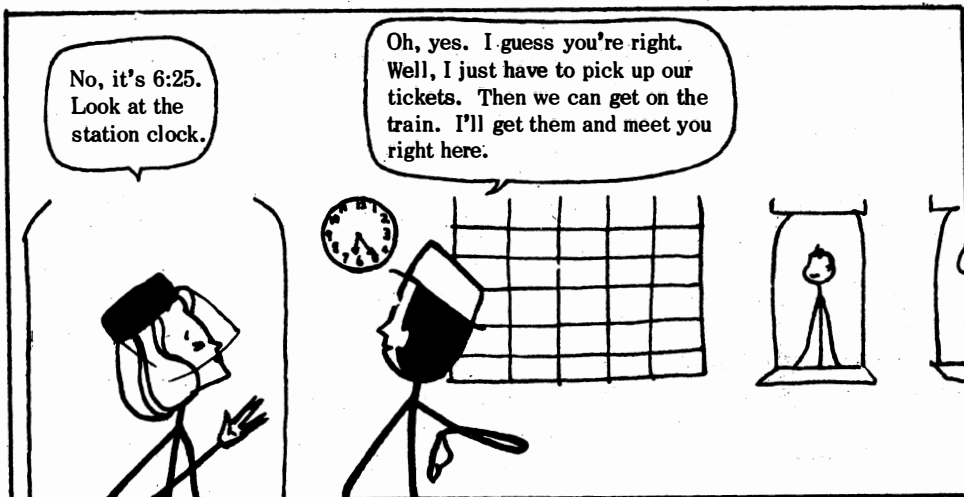
Reduced Sounds

/v/ /w/

Starting On A Trip







## UNIT 1206

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

(John and Mary were going to New York. This conversation took place just before they went to the train station.)

Mary: Have you called the taxi, John?

John: Yes I have. He should be here in a minute.  
Put on your coat and hat. Then we'll be ready.

Mary: Here he is now.

John: Good. I'll take the bags. You go ahead and get in.

(Mary and John got in the taxi. They arrived at the station. John paid the driver, and they got out. The next part of the conversation took place at the station.)

Mary: Hurry, John. It's 6:25, and the train leaves at 6:35.

John: I'm hurrying, but your watch is fast. I have 6:20.

Mary: No, it's 6:25. Look at the station clock.

John: Oh, yes. I guess you're right. Well, I just have to pick up our tickets. Then we can get on the train. I'll get them and meet you right here.

Mary: All right.

(After a few minutes)

John: O. K., Mary. I've got the tickets. Now let's look for gate 29. That's where the train leaves from.

Mary: There it is, right over there. I'm glad it's close. I'm ready to take off my hat and coat and relax.

John: So am I. I've got a New York paper. We can look for some shows to see while we're there.

Mary: Oh, I already have in mind a lot of things. I have decided to try on a lot of clothes.

John: Well, try on as many as you like. Just don't spend too much money.

Reading

I haven't felt very well today. I didn't feel well yesterday, either. I had a sore throat yesterday. And today I have a bad cold and a headache. I ought to go to bed and rest. But I have to work. I have a lot of things to do today.

If I don't feel better tomorrow, I guess I'll go to a doctor. I've never been to a doctor in this city. But my friends have given me the name and address of a good doctor.

## New Vocabulary

sore throat	address	have a headache
bad cold	feel well	have a sore throat
headache	feel sick	name and address
name	have a cold	have a lot of things to do

## Word Drill

sick	bed
I am sick	in bed
when I am sick	stay in bed

1. When I am sick I stay in bed.  
When I was sick, I stayed in bed.  
I'll stay in bed.  
I have stayed in bed two days.

cold	throat
a bad cold	a sore throat

2. He has a bad cold and a sore throat.  
He had a bad cold and a sore throat.  
He has had a bad cold and a sore throat.

guess	I guess I will
I guess	I guess I will see the doctor tomorrow.

3. I see the doctor every week.  
I saw the doctor every week.  
I'll see the doctor every week.  
I have seen the doctor every week.

Reading

I felt sick again yesterday. My cold was worse. I had a bad cough. So, I went to a doctor. I went to the doctor that my friends recommended. I had to wait a long time in the waiting room. The doctor was very busy. There were many patients.

The doctor looked me over very carefully. He asked a lot of questions. I didn't understand all that he asked me. He told me I had the flu. He told me to go home and go to bed for a few days. He gave me a prescription. I had the prescription filled at a drugstore. It's a good medicine, and I feel better already.

## New Vocabulary

a bad cough	a prescription	have the flu
waiting room	medicine	have a prescription filled
a long time	already	go to bed for a few days
patients	feel better	as well as I could
the flu	feel worse	as well as I can

## Review and Practice these Verb Phrases

get on (a bus, train, plane, or ship)  
 get off (of) (a bus, train, plane, or ship)  
 get in (to) (a car, truck, or taxi)  
 get out of (a car, truck, or taxi)  
 put on  
 take off (clothes)  
 try on  
 look for  
 take a look at  
 pick up  
 have in mind

## Examples:

1. I get on the bus at 35th Street, and I get off at Dupont Circle.
2. Get in the car. Get in, and I'll drive you home.
3. I got in the taxi in front of the movie, and I got out downtown.
4. He got out of the car slowly.
5. Put on your coat. Put it on.
6. He has put his hat on.
7. Take off your hat before you come in. Take it off.
8. She has taken her coat off.
9. He is trying on a new suit. He's trying it on.
10. She is trying a new pair of shoes on.
11. He's looking for his pencil.
12. I'm looking for the Dumbarton Hotel.
13. What are you looking for?
14. I'm looking for it, but I can't find it.
15. Take a look at the clock, and tell me the time.
16. Take a look at this book.
17. Have you taken a look at the suits over here?
18. I left my clothes at the laundry on Monday, and I can pick them up tomorrow.
19. Have you finished the suit so that I can pick it up?
20. If you'll go to the movies with me, I'll pick you up at 7:00.
21. What kind of a suit do you have in mind?
22. I had in mind a blue suit.
23. I had in mind going swimming yesterday, but it rained.

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

1. The Present Perfect Tense

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	I have studied	We have studied
2nd	You have studied	You have studied
3rd	He, she, has studied It has - - - - -	They have studied

	<u>Auxiliary</u>	<u>Past Participle</u> (Perfect Form)
I. $\longrightarrow$	have $\longrightarrow$	studied.
He $\longrightarrow$	has $\longrightarrow$	studied.

a. Study These Sentences.

I have studied my lesson. (Present Perfect)

I studied my lesson last night. (Simple Past)

He has taken an examination. (Present Perfect)

He took an examination yesterday. (Simple Past)

They have called a taxi. (Present Perfect)

They called a taxi at ten o'clock. (Simple Past)

He has answered the letter. (Present Perfect)

He answered the letter Monday. (Simple Past)

Remember that the Simple Past Tense describes an action which took place at a definite time in the past.

The Present Perfect Tense emphasizes the effects of a past action. It does not point to a definite past time.

## b. Repeat.

John and Mary have gone to New York.

They went yesterday.

John has called a cab.

He called a cab at nine o'clock.

He has picked up their tickets.

He picked up the tickets a few minutes ago.

## c. Formation of Negative and Interrogative Forms.

- (1) To form the
- negative
- , place
- not
- after the auxiliary verb.

I have studied my lesson.  
 I have not studied my lesson.  
 I haven't studied my lesson.

He has gone to town.  
 He has not gone to town.  
 He hasn't gone to town.

They have taken the examination.  
 They have not taken the examination.  
 They haven't taken the examination.

- (2) To form a
- question
- , place the
- auxiliary
- verb before the subject.

I have studied my lesson.  
Have I studied my lesson?

He has gone to town.  
Has he gone to town?

They have taken the examination.  
Have they taken the examination?

- (3) Affirmative Statement

Negative Statement

## Singular

I have studied the lesson.  
 I've studied the lesson.

I have not studied the lesson.  
 I haven't studied the lesson.

You have studied the lesson.  
 You've studied the lesson.

You have not studied the lesson.  
 You haven't studied the lesson.

He has studied the lesson.  
 He's studied the lesson.

He has not studied the lesson.  
 He hasn't studied the lesson.

She has studied the lesson.  
 She's studied the lesson.

She has not studied the lesson.  
 She hasn't studied the lesson.

## Plural

We have studied the lesson.  
 We've studied the lesson.

We have not studied the lesson.  
 We haven't studied the lesson.

You have studied the lesson.  
 You've studied the lesson.

You have not studied the lesson.  
 You haven't studied the lesson.

They have studied the lesson.  
 They've studied the lesson.

They have not studied the lesson.  
 They haven't studied the lesson.

## (4) Affirmative Question

## Negative Question

## Singular

Have I studied enough?	Haven't I studied enough?
Have you studied enough?	Haven't you studied enough?
Has he studied enough?	Hasn't he studied enough?
Has she studied enough?	Hasn't she studied enough?

## Plural

Have we studied enough?	Haven't we studied enough?
Have you studied enough?	Haven't you studied enough?
Have they studied enough?	Haven't they studied enough?

## d. Use the Correct Form of the Present Perfect Tense:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ fine. (Be)
2. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ sick. (Be)
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ him for a long time. (See)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ the letter. (Write)
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ that movie. (See)
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor. (Call)
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ by our house. (Come)
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ our vacation. (Take)
9. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ busy. (Be)
10. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ me his address. (Give)

## e. Select the Correct Form of the Simple Past or Present Perfect Tense:

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor yesterday. (See)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ here a week ago. (Be)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ a cold yesterday. (Have)
4. My head \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour. (Ache)
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ sick a week now. (Feel)
6. How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to wait? (Have)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ you yet? (Examine)
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation last year. (Have)
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ not \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation this year. (Have)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ this morning? (Call)

## f. First change to the Negative Statement Form. Then change to the Affirmative Question Form:

Example: He has studied English.  
He hasn't studied English.  
Has he studied English?

1. He has gone to the doctor.
2. I have called her several times.
3. She has taken a vacation.
4. He has been sick.
5. The doctor has given me a prescription.
6. He has had the flu.
7. He has been lucky.
8. They have been sick.
9. I have had a sore throat.
10. I have seen that TV show.

Should/Shouldn't

Ought To/Ought Not To

Should and ought to indicate obligation.

I haven't felt well this week.

I should go to a doctor now.

OR

I ought to go to a doctor now.

I shouldn't wait any longer.

(should not)

OR

I ought not to wait.

a. Substitute should for ought to.

1. He ought to call a taxi.
2. We ought to take the medicine.
3. We ought not to wait.
4. I ought to get ready.

b. Read these sentences once using should and once using ought to.

Example: I should go to a doctor.  
I ought to go to a doctor.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ stay in bed.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ get the prescription filled.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ study.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ take a vacation.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ ask Mary and Robert.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ be back by Monday.



## Some Irregular Verbs

<u>Simple Form</u>	<u>-ing Form</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
be	being	was were	(has (have) been
buy	buying	bought	" bought
do	doing	did	" done
drive	driving	drove	" driven
get	getting	got	" got (gotten)
give	giving	gave	" given
go	going	went	" gone
have	having	had	" had
know	knowing	knew	" known
leave	leaving	left	" left
let	letting	let	" let
lose	losing	lost	" lost
meet	meeting	met	" met
see	seeing	saw	" seen
put on	putting on	put on	" put on
speak	speaking	spoke	" spoken
spend	spending	spent	" spent
take off	taking off	took off	" taken off
think	thinking	thought	" thought
try on	trying on	tried on	" tried on
write	writing	wrote	" written

## TAPE 1206A

Listen to the following conversation.

John and Mary are going to New York. This conversation took place just before they went to the train station.

Mary: Have you called the taxi, John?

John: Yes, I have.  
It should be here in a minute.  
Put on your coat and hat.  
Then we'll be ready.

Mary: Here it is now.

John: Good. I'll take the bags.  
You go ahead and get in.

Mary and John got in the taxi. They arrived at the station. John paid the driver, and they got out. The next part of the conversation took place at the station.

Mary: Hurry John. It's 6:25.  
The train leaves at 6:35.

John: I'm hurrying, but your watch is fast.  
I have 6:20.

Mary: No, it's 6:25.  
Look at the station clock.

John: Oh yes, you're right.  
Well, I just have to pick up our tickets.  
I'll get them, and meet you right here.

Mary: All right.

After a few minutes

John: O. K. Mary. I've got the tickets.  
Now let's look for gate 29.  
That's where the train leaves from.

Mary: There it is, right over there.  
I'm glad it's close.  
I'm ready to take off my coat and hat and relax.

John: So am I. I've got a New York paper.  
We can look for some shows to see while we're there.

Mary: Oh, I already have in mind a lot of things.  
I've decided to try on a lot of clothes.

John: Well, try on as many as you like.  
Just don't spend too much money.

Now we'll listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen and repeat this pattern practice.

ahead

go ahead

You go ahead.

Let me go ahead.

Let's go ahead.

John went ahead with the bags.

ready

I'm ready

Are you ready?

We're ready to go to New York.

Who's ready to eat something?

I'm ready to leave now.

mind

have in mind

What did you have in mind?

I had in mind to leave early.

She had in mind to go shopping.

We know what you have in mind.

take place (happen)

Where did it take place?

It took place right here.

The accident took place at Fifth and Elm.

A big celebration will take place here soon.

What takes place now?

Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Where were John and Mary going?

They were going to New York.

What did John do?

He called a cab.

Did the cab come quickly?

Yes, it arrived right away.

Who carried the bags?

John carried them.

Where did he put the bags?

He put them into a taxi.

Where did they go?

They went to the station.

Was it a bus station?  
No, it wasn't.  
It was a train station.

Was the watch slow?  
No, it wasn't.  
It was fast.

Did John pick up the tickets?  
Yes, he picked up the tickets.

Do you think I'm right?  
Yes, I guess you're right.

Do you suppose it's true?  
Yes, I guess it's true.

Where does the train leave from?  
It leaves from gate 29.

Are you ready to relax?  
Yes, we're ready to take a break.

Are you relaxed?  
Yes, we're at ease.

What did Mary have in mind?  
Oh, she had a lot of things planned.

Did she plan to try on a lot of clothes?  
Yes, she had that in mind.

Notice the verb forms in the following sentences. Listen and repeat.

John is calling a taxi now.  
He always calls a cab.  
He called a taxi yesterday.  
He has already called a cab.

He is picking up the tickets now.  
He usually picks them up early.  
He didn't pick up the tickets yesterday.  
He hasn't picked them up yet.

The train is leaving at 6:35.  
It always leaves on time.  
It left at 6:35 yesterday.  
It has always left at the same time.

Mary is trying on a lot of clothes.  
She always tries on a lot of clothes.  
She tried on a lot last trip.  
She has tried on clothes every trip.

They are going to Chicago.  
 They always go to Chicago every year.  
 They went to Chicago last year.  
 They have gone to Chicago every year.

Notice the use of adverbs in these sentences. Listen and repeat.

Did they always study at night?  
 Yes, they studied every night.

Did they often write letters in class?  
 Yes, they sometimes wrote letters in class.

Did your friends frequently visit you?  
 Yes, they often visited us.

Did they usually eat in a cafeteria?  
 Yes, they frequently ate there.

How often did the teacher explain the lesson?  
 He explained the lesson every day.

What did we usually do in class?  
 We usually spoke English only.

When did they frequently take a trip?  
 They often went in the summer months.

Change the following to present perfect. Use "already." Then repeat the correct responses.

Example: Mary ate breakfast this morning.  
 She has already eaten breakfast this morning.  
 She has already eaten breakfast this morning.

Charles wrote his homework.

He has already written his homework.

John picked up the tickets.

He has already picked them up.

Mary spent a lot of money in New York.

She has already spent a lot of money.

We saw that movie yesterday.

We have already seen that movie.

Change the following to present perfect. Use "yet." Then repeat the correct responses.

Example: We didn't eat anything.  
We haven't eaten anything yet.  
We haven't eaten anything yet.

I didn't talk to the teacher.

We haven't talked to the teacher yet.

Ma y didn't spend much money in New York.

She hasn't spent much money in New York yet.

Joe didn't answer the letter.

Joe hasn't answered the letter yet.

We didn't look forward to the trip.

We haven't looked forward to the trip yet.

## TAPE 1206B

Listen to the following conversation.

Jim: Hi Bill. How have you been?  
Are you still sick?

Bill: Oh, I haven't felt very well, Jim.  
I have had a sore throat all week,  
I still have a bad cold and a headache.  
How are you getting along?

Jim: Fine now, thanks, just fine.  
But you should go to bed and rest.

Bill: No, I have a lot of things to do.  
I want to go to the ball game.

Jim: Well Bill, a month ago I was in Chicago.  
I also felt bad.  
I had a small cough.  
The next day the cough was worse.  
I came down with the flu.  
I didn't know what to do.

Bill: What did you do?

Jim: Well, I said to myself,  
I've never been to a doctor here,  
and I don't know any.

Bill: So - - -

Jim: A friend gave me the name and address of his doctor.  
He recommended him highly.  
That same afternoon I called on him.

Bill: You know, I'm very lucky.  
I haven't been sick much.  
I don't get sick easily.

Jim: I had to wait a long time in the waiting room.  
The doctor was very busy with a lot of patients.  
Finally he took me in  
and looked me over carefully.  
He asked a lot of questions.  
He said I had the flu.  
He gave me a shot  
and said to go to bed for a few days.  
He gave me a prescription.

Bill: Did you get better?

Jim: I had the prescription filled.  
I took some medicine and went to bed at once.  
Next morning, I already felt better.  
You had better see your doctor right away.

Bill: Thanks Jim, I'd better.  
I don't like to feel sick.  
I can't do anything.  
I just want to sleep.

Jim: O. K. Do that. See you later.  
Bye now, and thanks for listening.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to these vocabulary exercises and repeat.

sore throat

He has a sore throat.  
His throat is sore.  
His sore throat is better.

bad cold

I have a bad cold.  
My cold is very bad.  
My bad cold is worse today.

headache

She had a headache.  
Her head aches.  
Her headache is worse.

name and address

What is your name and address?  
Please tell me your name and where you live.  
We gave them our names and addresses.

lucky

We're lucky.  
We have good luck.  
We're lucky today.

look over

We're looking over the papers.  
We always look them over.  
We'll look over a lot of them soon.  
We looked over a lot yesterday.  
We haven't looked over many today.

feel

She's feeling better now.  
She feels better today.  
She'll feel better tomorrow.  
She felt worse yesterday.  
She has felt bad all week.



rest

He's resting better now.  
 He rests better in the afternoon.  
 He'll rest better tomorrow.  
 He rested badly yesterday.  
 He has rested better lately.

like to

We like to eat well.  
 We liked to eat yesterday.  
 We'll like to eat tomorrow.  
 We have always liked to eat well.

examine

He's examining the patients now.  
 He always examines them carefully.  
 He'll examine a lot of patients.  
 He examined a lot yesterday.  
 He hasn't examined many patients today.

Now let's practice some affirmative and negative statements. Listen and repeat.

The teacher has already explained the lesson.  
 He hasn't explained it yet.

John has already written the sentences.  
 He hasn't written them yet.

We have already listened to the tape.  
 We haven't listened to it yet.

I've already driven this car.  
 I've not driven it yet.

I've already fixed the TV.  
 I haven't fixed it yet.

Alice has already come down with a cold.  
 She hasn't come down with a cold yet.

She has already seen a doctor.  
 She has not seen a doctor yet.

The stores have already closed for the holidays.  
 They haven't closed for the holidays yet.

We've already had the prescription filled.  
 We haven't had the prescription filled yet.

He has already had a sore throat.  
 He hasn't had a sore throat yet.

We'll practice some questions. Notice the use of already and yet. Listen and repeat.

Have you already gone to the doctor?  
Have you gone to the doctor yet?

Has Robert already had the flu?  
Has he had the flu yet?

Have we already seen this movie?  
Have we seen this movie yet?

Has Helen already looked over the book?  
Has she looked over the book yet?

Has Jerry already got on the bus?  
Has he got on the bus yet?

Who has already had the prescription filled?  
Who hasn't had it filled yet?

Who has already got off the bus?  
Who hasn't got off the bus yet?

Who has already had the flu?  
Who hasn't had the flu yet?

Who has already seen this program?  
Who hasn't seen this program yet?

Who has already read the book?  
Who hasn't read it yet?

What have you already done?  
What haven't you done yet?

What have you already seen?  
What haven't you seen yet?

Where have you already seen this program?

Where haven't you been yet?

How many books have you already read this month?

How much sugar have you already put in the coffee?

How many students have you already talked to?

How many haven't you talked to yet?

## TAPE 1206C

Listen to the following conversation.

- A: I've had trouble starting my car.  
Have you ever tried to start a car like mine?
- B: Yes, I have.  
But it wouldn't start.
- A: Have you ever gone to a driving school?
- B: Yes, when I learned to drive.
- A: I don't like this weather.  
I have never liked to drive on wet roads.
- B: I've never driven much on wet roads.  
You must be careful.
- A: Have you ever seen much speeding on the highway?
- B: Yes, I have.  
Last night I saw a bad accident.  
One driver was going seventy.  
He couldn't stop.
- A: The proper hand signals are important too.  
Have you learned them well?
- B: Yes, I learned them for my driver's test.
- A: We must drive carefully.  
Careless driving has caused many bad accidents.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Let's practice this vocabulary drill.

have trouble

I have trouble understanding English.  
He has trouble getting to class on time.  
Do you have trouble driving in town?

wet

Rain makes the streets wet.  
Wet is the opposite of dry.  
Did the water make your coat wet?

speeding

When we drive too fast we are speeding.  
Going seventy miles an hour in town is speeding.  
The accident was caused by speeding.

go (do) seventy (go seventy miles per hour)

Going seventy is usually too fast.

You can go twenty through town.

He did sixty on the highway yesterday.

cause

Speeding caused the accident.

He has caused me to be late this week.

The rain causes good drivers to be careful.

Here are some sentences in the tenses we have learned. Listen and then repeat them.

I'll have trouble starting my car.

I have trouble starting my car.

I had trouble starting my car.

I have had trouble starting my car.

Will you ever think about us?

Do you ever think about us?

Did you ever think about us?

Have you ever thought about us?

They'll always be glad to see you.

They're always glad to see you.

They were always glad to see you.

They've always been glad to see you.

Careless driving will cause accidents.

Careless driving causes accidents.

Careless driving caused accidents.

Careless driving has caused accidents.

My friend will give me the addresses.

My friend gives me the addresses.

My friend gave me the addresses.

My friend has given me the addresses.

She'll put on her coat.

She puts on her coat every morning.

She put on her coat yesterday.

She has put on her coat.

The doctor'll soon take me into the office.

The doctor always takes me into the office.

The doctor finally took me into the office.

The doctor has finally taken me into the office.

We'll want to buy some clothes.

We want to buy some clothes.

We wanted to buy some clothes.

We've wanted to buy some clothes for a long time.

John and Mary will go to New York.  
 John and Mary often go to New York.  
 John and Mary often went to New York.  
 John and Mary have often gone to New York.

Listen to the following sentences in the present perfect. Then change them to the simple past tense and repeat the correct response.

Example: John has called a cab.  
 John called a cab.  
 John called a cab.

Have they answered the letter?  
 Did they answer the letter?  
 Did they answer the letter?

I have studied my lesson.

I studied my lesson.

Has he picked up the tickets?

Did he pick up the tickets?

They have written many letters.

They wrote many letters.

The doctor has been busy.

The doctor was busy.

Have you seen that movie?

Did you see that movie?

I have had a cold.

I had a cold.

We have often gone to the doctor.

We often went to the doctor.

He has stayed in bed a long time.

He stayed in bed a long time.

She has asked both Mary and Robert.

She asked both Mary and Robert.

Have they waited a long time for us?

Listen carefully to the following sentences.

John and Mary have gone to New York.  
They called a taxi and rode to the station.  
When they arrived at the station, John picked up the tickets.  
Their train left at 6:35.

You will now hear these statements and some questions about them. Answer my questions and then repeat the correct response.

Example: John and Mary have gone to New York.  
Where have John and Mary gone?  
John and Mary have gone to New York.  
John and Mary have gone to New York.

They called a taxi and rode to the station.  
What did they do before going to the station?

They called a taxi.

How did they go to the station?

They rode to the station.

When they arrived at the station, John picked up the tickets.  
What did John do at the station?

John picked up the tickets at the station.

Where did he pick up the tickets?

He picked up the tickets at the station.

Who picked up the tickets at the station?

John picked up the tickets at the station.

Their train left at 6:35.  
When did their train leave?

Their train left at 6:35.

## Sound and Intonation

### /v/ and /w/

Practice with /v/ and /w/.

Remember that /v/ is made by touching the upper teeth with the lower lip.

Listen and repeat.

very	of	live
vowel	over	five
vacation	never	have

Listen.

Remember that /w/ is made by protruding and rounding the lips. The speaker then glides to a full vowel sound.

Listen and repeat.

want	was	wet
were	we	woman
well	went	women

Listen.

Do not substitute /v/ for /w/.

Listen and repeat.

we _____ V	west — vest
we _____ V	west — vest
we _____ V	west — vest
wine _____ vine	
wine _____ vine	
wine _____ vine	

## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

### Structures

#### Special Expressions

Make up (my) mind  
 Change (my) mind  
 Sound like  
 Take in

#### Progressive Verb Phrase

Review

#### Modal Auxiliaries

Could - - can  
 Might - - may  
 Would -- will

#### Irregular Verbs

### Sound and Intonations

#### "Or Alternative" Intonation Pattern

/r/ + a consonant

#### Initial consonant clusters

/pl/, /pr/

/bl/, /br/

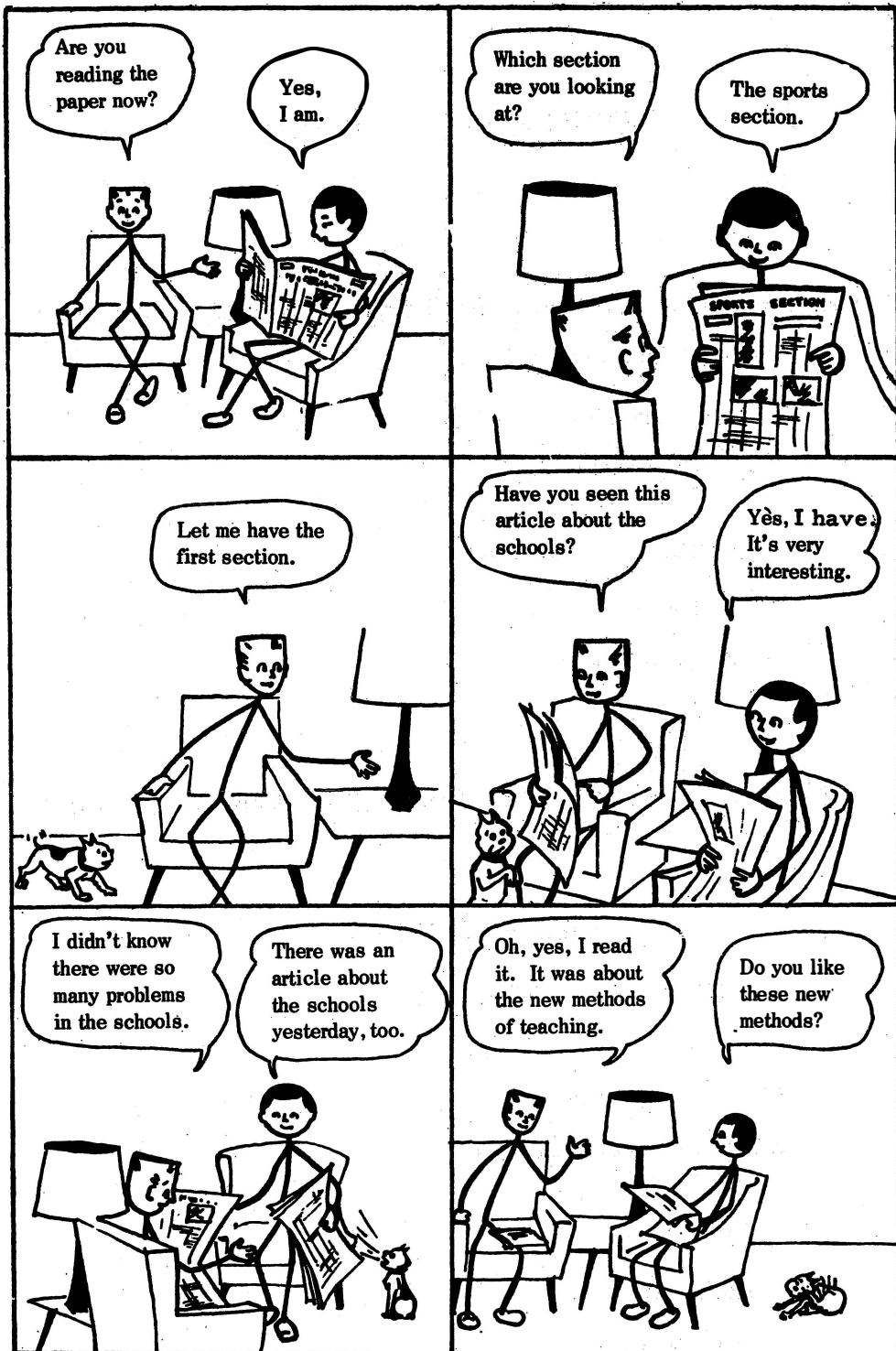
/gl/, /gr/

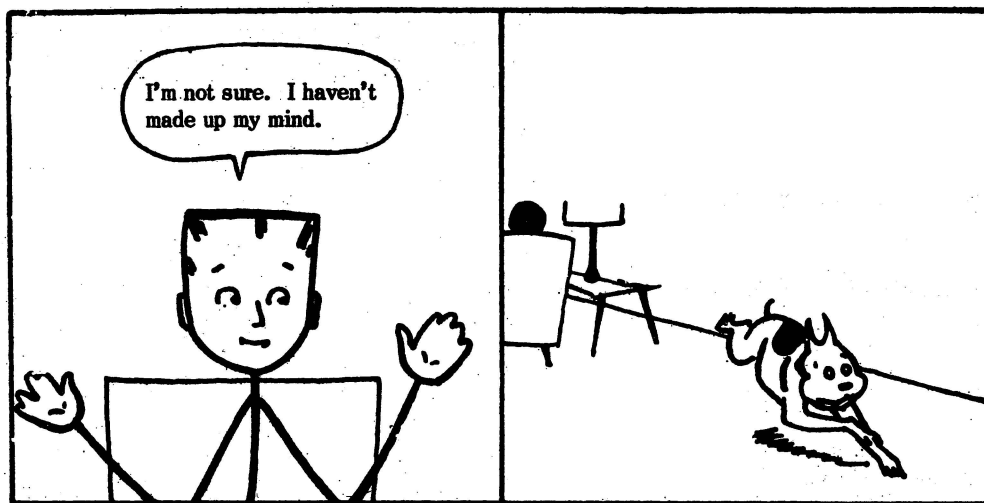
/fl/, /fr/

/s/ clusters



Reading the Newspaper





## UNIT 1207

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

A: Are you reading the paper now?

B: Yes, I am.

A: Which section are you looking at?

B: The sports section.

A: Let me have the first section.

A: Have you seen this article about the schools?

B: Yes, I have. It's very interesting.

A: I didn't know there were so many problems in the schools.

B: There was an article about the schools yesterday, too.

A: Oh yes, I read it. It was about the new methods of teaching.

B: Do you like these new methods?

A: I'm not sure. I haven't made up my mind.

## Special Expressions

MAKE UP (MY) MIND = Decide

1. I MADE UP MY MIND about the party.  
You MADE UP YOUR MIND about the dance.
3. We MADE UP OUR MINDS about our vacation.
4. They MADE UP THEIR MINDS to study hard.
5. Did he MAKE UP HIS MIND about his vacation?
6. Did she MAKE UP HER MIND to go?
7. Why don't you MAKE UP YOUR MIND?
8. When did he MAKE UP HIS MIND?

CHANGE (MY) MIND = Decide differently

1. She always CHANGES HER MIND at the last minute.
2. He never CHANGES HIS MIND.
3. We don't often CHANGE OUR MINDS.
4. I CHANGED MY MIND about the weekend.
5. Why do some people CHANGE THEIR MINDS so often?
6. You didn't CHANGE YOUR MIND about our date, did you?

## Reading

Most people like to read newspapers. There is a lot of information in every newspaper. Different people like different sections of the paper. Some people read the sports section first. Others always look at the headlines first. Some read only the comic strips.

I am reading the paper now. I am looking at the first page. I always read the front page first. The front page has the most important national and international news. My wife is looking at the paper, too. She is reading the women's section. She is reading about food and clothes. My little boy is reading the comic strips.

I don't have enough time to read every page. There are many pages in most newspapers. There are usually forty to fifty pages.

## New Vocabulary

newspaper	problem
section	article
want ads	methods
comic section	editorial
headlines	front page

## Vocabulary exercises

- newspaper  
There is much information in the newspapers.  
Do you read the newspaper every day?  
Most large cities have daily newspapers.
- section (part)  
A large newspaper has many sections.  
Have you read all the sections in this paper?  
I always read the sports section first.
- want ads  
Newspapers have many want ads.  
I put a want ad in the paper if I want to sell something.  
We read the want ads if we want to buy something.
- comic section  
The funnies are in the comic section.  
Children like to read the comic section first.  
Do you ever read the comic section?
- problem  
The schools have many problems.  
Have you a problem in speaking English?  
Mathematics problems are often difficult to work.
- article  
I read many articles in the paper every night.  
Did you read the article about his book?  
We read the article about schools yesterday.

7. methods  
There are several new methods of teaching.  
Do you like this new method?  
Which method does your teacher use to teach English?
8. editorial  
The editor writes the editorials.  
The editorials say what the editor thinks.  
The editorial page is usually not the first page.
9. front page  
The first page is the front page of the paper.  
The important news is on the front page.  
You should always read the front page.
10. headlines  
The headlines are on the front page.  
The headlines are easy to read.  
We write headlines about the important articles.

#### Word Drill

1. page  
many pages  
paper  
newspaper  
in a newspaper  
There are many pages in a newspaper.
2. read  
like  
like to  
like to read  
Most people like to read newspapers.
3. look  
look at  
every  
every page  
Most people do not look at every page.
4. first  
first page  
front  
front page  
The first page is the front page.
5. national  
national news  
the national news  
The national news is on the front page.

6. most  
most people  
many  
many pages  
Most people read many pages.
7. enough  
enough time  
read  
to read  
page  
every page  
There is not enough time to read every page.
8. always  
always read  
the front page  
Many people always read the front page.
9. then  
then they read  
other sections  
Then they read the other sections.

### Reading Drill

#### Drill 1

<u>Question</u>	<u>Long Answer</u>
1. Do most people like to read newspapers?	Yes, most people like to read newspapers.
2. Is there a lot of information in every newspaper?	Yes, _____ _____
3. Do different people prefer different sections of the paper?	
4. Do some people read the sports section first?	
5. Do other people always look at the headlines first?	
6. Do some people read only the comic strips?	

#### Drill 2

1. What can we find in most newspapers?  
We can find a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in most newspapers.
2. What are some of the sections of a newspaper?  
Some of the sections of a newspaper are the \_\_\_\_\_,  
the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Where is the most important national and international news? The most important national and international news is on the \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is his wife reading?  
She is reading the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. What is the little boy reading?  
The little boy is reading the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. How many pages are there in most newspapers?  
There are \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ pages in most newspapers.

### Review of Patterns With Progressive Verb Phrases

I am looking at the paper now.  
 You are looking at the paper now.  
 We are looking at the paper now.  
 They are looking at the paper now.  
 My wife and I are looking at the paper now.  
 He is looking at the paper now.  
 She is looking at the paper now.  
 My wife is looking at the paper now.

1. Am I looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, you are.  
 No, you're not.  
 No, you aren't.
2. Are you looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, I am.  
 No, I'm not.
3. Are we looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, we are.  
 No, we're not.  
 No, we aren't.
4. Are they looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, they are.  
 No, they're not.  
 No, they aren't.
5. Is he looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, he is.  
 No, he's not.  
 No, he isn't.
6. Is she looking at the paper now?  
 Yes, she is.  
 No, she's not.  
 No, she isn't.

Making a Date





## Dialog

Tom: Hello. Is this Jean?

Jean: Yes, it is. Who's this?

Tom: This is Tom Gordon.

Jean: Oh, hi, Tom. How've you been?

Tom: Just fine. Look Jean, I called to ask if you're busy Saturday night.

Jean: Let's see. No, I don't think I've got anything planned. Why?

Tom: Well, I thought we might take in a movie and some dancing.

Jean: That sounds like fun.

Tom: Could you be ready about 7:30?

Jean: I think so.

Tom: O. K. I'll pick you up about then.

Jean: Fine. It's a date. So long, Tom. And thanks for asking me.

## Vocabulary and Sentence Drill

1. just  
I'm just fine.  
He felt just fine yesterday.  
They have just been here 10 minutes.  
You arrived just on time.
2. busy  
Are you busy Saturday night?  
I'm not often busy.  
We are busy during the day.  
He'll be busy next week.
3. anything  
Do you have anything with you?  
We haven't planned anything.  
Did you see anything yesterday?  
They didn't bring anything with them.
4. take in  
Let's take in a movie tonight.  
Did you take in the concert last week?  
We have taken in some ball games.  
He took in a dance last week.
5. sound like  
Your plans sound like fun.  
This class sounds like a lot of work.  
You sound like students.  
We sound like teachers.

Answer questions about the Dialog.

1. Who is calling Jean?
2. What does he ask Jean?
3. What does she answer?
4. What does he want to do Saturday night?
5. Does she accept the date?
6. What time should she be ready?

Review of Expressions with the Verb Be.

tired	busy
sleepy	afraid
hungry	sorry
thirsty	glad

Repeat.

1. Is he tired? No, he isn't tired. He's sleepy.
2. Are you hungry? No, I'm not hungry. I'm thirsty.
3. Is the policeman angry? No, he's not angry. He's busy.
4. Are you afraid? No, I'm not afraid. I'm worried.
5. Is the girl sorry? No, she's not sorry. She's glad.

Special Expression

#### PICK UP

1. I have to pick up my clothes at the laundry.
2. I'll pick you up about eight-thirty.
3. Please pick up that pencil.
4. I'm going to pick up a package at the post office.

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## 1. Modals in English

a. CAN - COULD

Can + simple form = present or future time

Could + simple form = past time

I can go now.

I can go tomorrow.

I couldn't go yesterday.

1. I could not go yesterday, but I can go today.
2. They could not finish last night, but they can finish this morning.
3. We could not understand last week, but we can understand now.
4. She could not study yesterday afternoon, but she can study this afternoon.

MAY - MIGHT

## b.

Although may and might are often interchangeable, may is often more emphatic than might.

I may go. (I'm undecided.)

I might go. (I probably won't.)

May or might + simple form = present or future time.

I may fly home. (now or later)

I might fly home.

1. I was afraid he might not understand.  
I am afraid he may not understand.
2. We thought he might not come yesterday.  
We think he may come today.
3. They said it might be hot.  
They say it may be hot today.
4. He told us she might not be on time yesterday.  
He tells us she may not be on time today.
5. It may be cold tomorrow.  
It might be cold tomorrow.
6. She may come later.  
She might come later.
7. We may finish tonight.  
We might finish tonight.
8. You may need money this week.  
You might need money this week.

c. WILL - WOULD

Will + simple form = present or future time.

Will never points to the past.

He will go.

Will he go?

He won't go.

Won't he go?

Would not indicates unwillingness in the past.

He will leave next week.

He would not leave last week.

1. He would not come yesterday, but he will come tomorrow.
2. They would not go last night, but they will go tonight.
3. I would not study yesterday, but I will study today.
4. You would not work last week, but you will work this week.

In expressing invitations we use would + like to + simple form.

1. Would you like to go to the dance?  
Yes, I would.  
I'd like to.
2. Would John like to go with us?  
Yes, he would.  
He'd like to.
3. Would you like some coffee?  
Yes, I would.  
I'd like some.
4. Would they like to visit us?  
Yes, they would.  
They'd like to.
5. Would she like to see a movie?  
Yes, she would.  
She'd like to.

In expressing wants, would + simple form = present or future.

- Would you like some coffee?  
Wouldn't you like some more coffee?  
I would like some coffee.  
I wouldn't like any more coffee now.

## 2. Grammar Drills

a. Change might to may.

1. We might buy some things tomorrow.
2. They might send a letter to my family.
3. She might not come with us.
4. The Browns might need to buy some stamps.
5. The teacher might not understand your problem.
6. The children might not go alone.

b. Drill with could and can, would and will.

1. Could you go to the bank yesterday?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
But I \_\_\_\_\_ go today.
2. Could they understand lesson two?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
But they \_\_\_\_\_ understand lesson three.
3. Could she speak English last year?  
No, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
But she \_\_\_\_\_ speak English now.
4. Would he help you last night?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.  
But he \_\_\_\_\_ help me tonight.
5. Would the people work on Sunday?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
But they \_\_\_\_\_ work today.

c. Drill with might and may.

1. He said it might rain.  
He says it \_\_\_\_\_ rain.
2. They thought they might come.  
They think they \_\_\_\_\_ come.
3. She told us she might leave early.  
She tells us she \_\_\_\_\_ leave early.
4. We were afraid the stores might be closed.  
We are afraid the stores \_\_\_\_\_ be closed.
5. The doctor said you might be better next week.  
The doctor says you \_\_\_\_\_ be better next week.

- d. Change from may to might.
1. They may have a dance next week.
  2. The next lesson may be very hard.
  3. We may take a trip next summer.
  4. It may rain tonight.
  5. There may be a test next week.
- e. Drill with the contraction of the modal would like to.
1. Would you like to see a movie?  
Yes, I would.  
I'd like to.
  2. Would your friend like to visit us?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ like to.
  3. Would they like to have some coffee?  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
\_\_\_\_\_ like to.

## 3. Irregular Verbs

<u>Simple Form</u>	<u>-ing Form</u>	<u>Simple past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
bring	bringing	brought	brought
choose	choosing	chose	chosen
come back	coming back	came back	come back
drink	drinking	drank	drunk
eat	eating	ate	eaten
feel	feeling	felt	felt
find	finding	found	found
fly	flying	flew	flown
hold	holding	held	held
read	reading	read	read
ride	riding	rode	ridden
run	running	ran	run
send	sending	sent	sent
stand up	standing up	stood up	stood up
take off	taking off	took off	taken off
teach	teaching	taught	taught
try on	trying on	tried on	tried on
understand	understanding	understood	understood
wear	wearing	wore	worn

## TAPE 1207A

Listen to the following conversation between two people reading a newspaper.

A: Are you reading the paper now?

B: Yes, I am.

A: Which section are you looking at?

B: The sports section.

A: Let me have the first section.

A: Have you seen this article about schools?

B: Yes, I have.

It is very interesting.

A: The schools have many problems.

B: Did you read the article about teaching?

A: Oh, yes, I read it.

It was about new teaching methods

B: Do you like these methods?

A: I'm not sure.

I haven't made up my mind

Now let's listen to it again and repeat.

Now we'll practice the new vocabulary. Listen and repeat.

methods

new methods

new methods of teaching

Do you like the new methods of teaching?

What is the latest method of teaching English?

section

sports section

want ads section

I like the comic section best.

Father prefers the sports section.

What section of town do you live in?

problems

many problems

The schools have lots of problems.

Can you work this math problem?

The biggest problem is speaking English.

article

newspaper article

Did you read the newspaper article about schools?

No, I read the article on sports.



editorialeditorial page

The editorial page is the editor's page.

We read personal opinions on the editorial page.

Famous people express their opinions on the editorial page.

sportssports section

Football, baseball, and boxing are sports.

Many men read only the sports section.

want adswant ads section

We find small advertisements in the want ads.

Read the want ads if you want to buy or sell.

front page or first page

The front page gives only facts.

The first page does not tell us personal opinions.

The front page has the most important news.

Here are some special expressions to practice. Listen and repeat.

make up (my) mind = decide definitely

1. I made up my mind about the party.
2. You made up your mind about the dance.
3. We made up our minds about our vacation.
4. They made up their minds to study hard.
5. Did he make up his mind about his work?
6. Did she make up her mind to go?
7. Why don't you make up your mind?
8. When did he make up his mind?

change (my) mind = decide differently

9. She always changes her mind at the last minute.
10. He never changes his mind about money.
11. We don't often change our minds.
12. I changed my mind about the weekend.
13. Why do people change their minds so often?
14. You didn't change your mind about our date, did you?

Here are some sentences using different verb phrases. Notice the structure and the tenses of these phrases. Listen and repeat.

I'm reading the paper now.  
 I always read it after breakfast.  
 I read the sports page first.  
 I have already read the first page.  
 I'll read the funnies later.

Are you reading about the schools?  
 Did you read the editorial page?  
 Do you often read the want ads?  
 Have you read the weather report yet?  
 Will you read about the accident?

He's not reading about the accident.  
 He didn't read the want ads.  
 He never reads the funnies.  
 He hasn't read the sports page yet.  
 He won't read the editorial page at all.

What is she reading now?  
 What does she always read first?  
 What did she read in the want ads?  
 What has she already read?  
 What will she read next?

What are they doing now?  
 What do they often do after breakfast?  
 What did they do last night?  
 What have they already done?  
 What will they do next?

We plan to go on vacation in August.  
 We're planning to go on vacation in August.  
 We planned to go on vacation in August.  
 We have already planned to go on vacation.  
 We'll plan to go on vacation in August.

He's not expecting to leave early.  
 He doesn't expect to leave early.  
 He didn't expect to leave early.  
 He hasn't expected to leave early.  
 He won't expect to leave early.

Who wants to go with me?  
 Who wanted to take a break?  
 Who always wants to take a break?  
 Who will want to take a break?

We're trying to drive a car.  
We often try to drive a car.  
We tried to drive a car yesterday.  
We have often tried to drive a car.  
We will try to drive a car again tomorrow.

Alice needs to come early.  
She frequently needs to come early.  
She needed to come early yesterday.  
She has needed to come early all this week.  
She will need to come early tomorrow too.

Now let's practice some questions and answers using have to, like to, and hope to.

Listen and repeat.

Do you have to go so soon?  
Yes, we have to. We're very sorry.

Does James hope to take a trip?  
No, he doesn't hope to this year.

Will Mary like to travel by boat?  
Yes, she'll like to very much.

Does she like to eat ice cream?  
Yes, she does. She likes to.

Who has to learn English quickly?  
We have to learn English quickly.

What does Alice like to do?  
She likes to speak English.

Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Who wants a newspaper?  
Alice wants one.

Who expects friends for the holidays?  
John expects some.

Who plans to give a party?  
John plans to.

Who plans a trip?  
I do.

Who hopes for good luck?  
We all do.

Who tries to make a lot of money?  
Henry does.

**Listen and repeat these sentences using the present perfect verb phrase.**

**I have already seen that picture.  
You have lost your hat.  
He has shortened your sleeves.  
She has already mailed the letter.  
We have seldom gone to the symphony.  
They have often made trips by plane.  
The girls have already left for the holidays.  
All of you have visited this zoo before.**

**Who has lost his hat?  
Who has seen this picture before?  
Who has seldom gone to the ballet?  
Who has often made trips by plane?  
Who has already left for the holidays?  
Who has visited this zoo before?**

**Listen and repeat.**

**The students want to go downtown Saturday.  
John is listening to a tape in lab.  
He won't be able to remember anything.  
He's thinking about his girl friend.  
Henry is repeating everything he hears.  
He hopes to learn the language right away.  
He expects to practice English.  
The students go to lab every day.  
They had a test yesterday.  
Some of them speak English very well.  
Some don't do so well.  
All of them will learn well enough.  
Why don't you come in to listen to them?  
Don't you think they're very good?  
Yes, we do.**

## TAPE 1207B

Listen to the following reading.

Most people like to read newspapers.  
 There is a lot of information in every newspaper.  
 Different people like different sections of the paper.  
 Some people read the sports section first.  
 Others always look at the headlines first.  
 Many read only the comic strips.

I am reading the paper now.  
 I'm looking at the first page.  
 I always read the front page first.  
 The front page has the most important news.  
 My wife is looking at the paper, too.  
 She's reading the women's section.  
 She's reading about food and clothes.  
 My little boy is reading the comic strips.

I don't have enough time to read every page.  
 There are a lot of pages in most newspapers.  
 There are usually 40 to 50 pages.

Now let's listen to it again and repeat it.

Listen and repeat this vocabulary practice.

comic strips

I read only the comic strips.  
 I like to read the funnies.  
 Comic strips are also called funnies.

headlines

Each newspaper article begins with a headline.  
 The headlines today are very interesting.  
 We like to read the big black headlines.

date

It's a date.  
 She had a date with my brother.  
 I have a date with Mary Jones too.  
 We made a date to go to the theater.

sounds like (appears, seems to be)

That sounds like fun.  
 What does it sound like?  
 It sounds like good music.

Listen and repeat these questions and answers.

Do a lot of people read the newspapers?  
Of course. Most people like to read them.

Is there much information in the papers?  
Yes. There's a lot of information there.

Does everybody read the same sections?  
No, different people like different pages.

What do we usually read first?  
Some people read the sports section first.  
Others always look at the headlines first.  
I read only the comic strips.

What are you doing now?  
I'm reading the paper now.  
I'm reading the comic section.

Do you always read it first?  
Yes, I always do.  
Then, I read the front page.  
It has the most important news.

What is your friend doing?  
She's reading the women's section.  
She likes to read about food and clothes.

How many pages are there in the paper?  
There are usually 40 to 50 pages.

Listen and repeat these sentences. Notice the tense of the verbs.

What do you think about it?  
I think she may go with me.

John said, he couldn't go with us.  
Robert says, he can go for two hours.

This morning I thought it might rain.  
Now I don't think it will.

Alice said she wouldn't be at home today.  
I know she will be.

Did Henry say he would do the work?  
Yes, but now he says he won't.

Listen to the following conversation between two people.

Hello. Is this Jean?

Yes, it is. Who's this?

This is Tom Gordon.

Oh hi, Tom. How've you been?

Just fine. Look Jean, I called to see if you're busy Saturday night.  
Let's see, no, I have nothing planned.

Well, I thought we might take in a movie and some dancing.  
That sounds like fun.

Could you be ready about 7:30?  
I think so.

O. K. I'll pick you up about then.  
Fine. It's a date.

Good-bye.  
So long, Tom. And thanks for asking me.

Now let's read it again and repeat it.

Notice the following commands, polite expressions and invitations. Listen and repeat.

Come in and be seated.

Do not open your books yet.

Take pencil and paper and listen carefully.

Please write your name and number at the top of the paper.

Please do not erase anything.

Now let's begin the test.

Shall I start the tape?

Would you please start the tape?

Let's not talk, students; let's try to do our best.

Would you please stop talking and listen?

Would you like to have a break now?

Would you like to have coffee with me?

Do you take cream and sugar?

Would you like some cake?

Alice, would you like to eat dinner with me?

We could go to the main cafeteria for lunch.

Let me buy you a coke, Mary.

Robert, would you like one, too?

Yes, I would, but I'll pay for yours instead.

Would you like to come over to my house for supper?

We could watch TV later.

Answer the following questions affirmatively. Then repeat the correct response.

Example: Did Mary study the lesson last night?

Yes, she studied it.

Yes, she studied it.

Did you read the comic section?

Yes, I (we) read it.

Did John turn off the light?

Yes, he turned it off.

Did Robert say he might come later?

Yes, he said he might.

Did you see the article about schools?

Yes, we saw it.

Did you look at the want ads?

Yes, we looked at them.

Did the students change their minds?

Yes, they changed their minds.

Did Alice understand the lesson?

Yes, she understood it.

Did the visitors come by plane?

Yes, they came by plane.



Did it begin to rain at 9 o'clock?

Yes, it began to at 9 o'clock.

Did you go to New York by train?

Yes, I went ( - ) by train.

Did he ride to work in a bus?

Yes, he rode (to work) in a bus.

Did Mary understand the lesson?

Yes, she understood it.

Did you bring the tape today?

Yes, I brought it.

Change the following statements to the negative. Then repeat the correct responses.

Example: Mary studied the lesson last night.  
She didn't study it.  
She didn't study it.

John left the party early.

He didn't leave the party early.

We met Mary there.

We didn't meet her there.

We got an answer to our letter.

We didn't get an answer to it.

The watch ran a long time.

It didn't run long.

The man got on the bus at the corner.

He didn't get on it at the corner.

## TAPE 1207C

Listen to the following conversation between two people in a railroad station in New York.

I have just arrived in New York.  
I must go to San Francisco in a few days.  
I plan to go by train.  
How long will the trip take?

The trip will take more than two days.  
What will you do on this long trip?

I like to read a lot.  
Maybe you can help me.  
Can you suggest some good magazines?

What kind of magazines do you like?  
You may buy magazines about particular topics.  
There are also magazines for people with many interests.  
These contain articles, stories, and cartoons.  
You can find several good weekly news magazines.

I like to read about a lot of things.  
Which magazines print articles about different things?

Perhaps you would like a "digest".  
These magazines take articles from many other magazines.  
They make these articles short  
and print them again.  
Here you can read about many things.

Sometimes it is interesting to look at pictures.

Yes, you might want to buy a picture magazine.  
Some magazines give the news in photographs.  
These are interesting.  
You can understand them easily.

Are magazines expensive?

Some are expensive and some are cheap.  
Most magazines cost from 25 to 50 cents.

Thanks for the information.  
I'll buy some magazines and enjoy the trip.

Now let's listen to the conversation again and repeat what we hear.

Now we'll practice some of the vocabulary in this conversation. Listen and repeat.

maybe (perhaps)

Maybe you can help me.

Maybe I'll have time to go with you tomorrow.

Maybe we can go to movies on Saturday.

take

The trip takes more than two days.

It takes a long time to learn English.

Does it take long to read this book?

topic (subject)

What is your favorite topic of conversation?

My favorite topic is travel.

The topic of your talk is interesting.

cartoons

Cartoons are usually funny.

Do you understand these cartoons?

This magazine has many good cartoons.

"digest"

A "digest" is a short form of an article.

He wrote a "digest" of the book.

Do you like to read "digests" of books?

print

Magazines print articles.

Some people print their notes, others write theirs.

Do you print your exercises?

picture

Pictures are easy to understand.

Do you have some pictures of your house?

We went to town and took some pictures.

Let's practice some sentences using modals. Listen to the sentences and then repeat them.

Couldn't you call me yesterday?

No, I couldn't, but I can call tonight.

Did you read the newspaper last night?

No, I couldn't; I didn't have time.

I can read it today though.

They couldn't understand him.

They can't understand this book.

Will you be able to go tomorrow?  
 I may be able to go then.  
 I might be able to go.

We may go to the concert tonight.  
 We might go to the concert tonight.

I thought he might not come last week.  
 Do you think he may come now?

He was afraid you might not understand.  
 He's afraid you may not understand.

Would he read the paper yesterday?  
 No, but he'll read it tomorrow.

He would not leave before I arrived.  
 He will leave when I arrive.

Would you like some coffee?  
 No, I wouldn't like any coffee now.

He will do the work for you today.  
 Wouldn't he do the work yesterday?

You will now hear some sentences using modals in the present tense form.  
 Now change these modals to the past tense form and repeat the correct response.

Example: He will not drive his car on the highway.  
 He would not drive his car on the highway.  
 He would not drive his car on the highway.

I can't read this book.

I couldn't read this book.

He may not understand this article.

He might not understand this article.

They will not leave the school.

They would not leave the school.

Why can't we have a holiday?

Why couldn't we have a holiday?

She may make a long trip.

She might make a long trip.

Will you go by train or by bus?

Would you go by train or by bus?

John can buy a new suit for \$50.00.

John could buy a new suit for \$50.00.

John may have \$50.00 to buy a new suit.

John might have \$50.00 to buy a new suit.

John will buy a new suit with his \$50.00.

John would buy a new suit with his \$50.00.

## SOUND AND INTONATION

## The "Or Alternative" Pattern

Listen.

Here are some sentences containing words in a series connected by or. Notice the intonation pattern.

( coffee ↑ tea ↑ milk ↓ )

Listen and repeat.

Did he order coffee, ↑ tea, ↑ or milk ↓ ?  
 Did he order tomato salad, ↑ tossed salad, ↑ or coleslaw ↓ ?  
 Did he order chicken, ↑ ham, ↑ or steak ↓ ?  
 Did he order his steak rare, ↑ medium, ↑ or well done ↓ ?  
 Did he order apple, ↑ cherry, ↑ or lemon custard ↓ ?

Has he ordered coffee, ↑ tea, ↑ or milk ↓ ?  
 Has he ordered tomato salad, ↑ tossed salad, ↑ or coleslaw ↓ ?  
 Has he ordered chicken, ↑ ham, ↑ or steak ↓ ?  
 Has he ordered his steak rare, ↑ medium, ↑ or well done ↓ ?  
 Has he ordered apple, ↑ cherry, ↑ or lemon custard ↓ ?

Listen.

Remember that most English words end in consonants and that these consonants stop the flow of breath. Two or more consonants may be referred to as clusters.

/ r / + a consonant

Listen and repeat.

heart  
part  
march  
parking

barber  
large  
fourth  
north

girl

Listen.

Notice these contrasting clusters.

Listen and repeat.

/pl/, /pr/

play	pray
play	pray
play	pray

/bl/, /br/

black	brown
black	brown
black	brown

/gl/, /gr/

glass	grass
glass	grass
glass	grass

/fl/, /fr/

fly	fry
fly	fry
fly	fry

/s/ clusters

Listen.

Remember that /s/ is voiceless.

Listen and repeat.

slow  
swim  
steak  
student  
school  
spell  
street  
smoke

**OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES****Structures****Special Expressions**

Turn on  
Turn off

**Question Word**

Review

**Statements to Questions**

Review

**Modal Auxiliaries****Drill**

can, will, may  
should, must

**Irregular Verbs****Sound and Intonation**

"And sequence" intonation pattern

Final Consonant Clusters

Watching Television





## UNIT 1208

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

- A: Do you want to look at television tonight?  
 B: Well, there's nothing interesting tonight. But turn it on if you want to.
- A: I want to see that story about space travel.  
 B: Oh, I forgot that was on tonight.  
 I'd like to see it, too.
- A: It comes on at nine o'clock.  
 B: Is there anything else you want to see?
- A: No, nothing in particular. Later on, I want to see the news.  
 B: That's fine.

## Special Expressions

## TURN ON, TURN OFF

1. Turn the television on.
2. Turn the radio on.
3. Turn the light on.
4. Turn the motor on.
5. Please turn the television off.
6. Please turn the radio off.
7. Please turn the light off.
8. Please turn the motor off.

## Reading

Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a television set. They enjoy watching TV. They don't usually watch programs during the day. Mr. Andrews is at work. The children are at school. Mrs. Andrews is too busy. But they look at TV programs almost every evening. They turn on TV after dinner.

The TV set is in the living room. Mr. Andrews likes to lie on the sofa to watch his favorite programs. Mrs. Andrews sits in her chair. The children often lie on the floor. The children like adventure stories. Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like comedy shows.

Last night they watched a comedy program. Tonight they are looking at an adventure story. Tomorrow night they will look at another comedy program. They usually turn off the TV at eleven o'clock.

## New Vocabulary

evening	program	busy	very
story	chair	favorite	too
room	floor	almost	

## Word Drill

- evening  
the evening  
in the evening.  
We often study in the evening.
- story  
stories  
interesting stories  
This book has some interesting stories.
- program  
favorite program  
my favorite program  
That is Mr. Andrews' favorite program.
- chairs  
many chairs  
room  
living room  
in the living room  
There are many chairs in the living room.
- watch  
like to watch  
programs  
TV programs  
Do you like to watch TV programs?
- sit  
we sit  
listen  
and listen  
They like to sit and listen.
- busy  
too busy  
program  
favorite program  
She is too busy to see her favorite program.
- lie  
lying  
floor  
the floor  
on the floor  
The children are lying on the floor.
- very  
very busy  
evening  
every evening  
almost every evening  
We are very busy almost every evening.

## Drills on Reading

### Questions and answers

1. Do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a television set?
2. Do they enjoy looking at TV?
3. Do they usually look at programs during the day?
4. Do they look at TV in the evening?
5. Is the TV set in the bedroom?
6. Do the children ever watch TV?
7. Are they looking at an adventure story tonight?
8. Will they look at an adventure story tomorrow night?
9. Do they usually turn off the TV at eleven o'clock?

### Remember the facts!

1. Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a \_\_\_\_\_ set.
2. They enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ at TV
3. They turn it on after \_\_\_\_\_
4. The TV set is in the \_\_\_\_\_
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ often lie on the floor.
6. Last \_\_\_\_\_ they watched a comedy program.
7. Tomorrow night they will look at another comedy \_

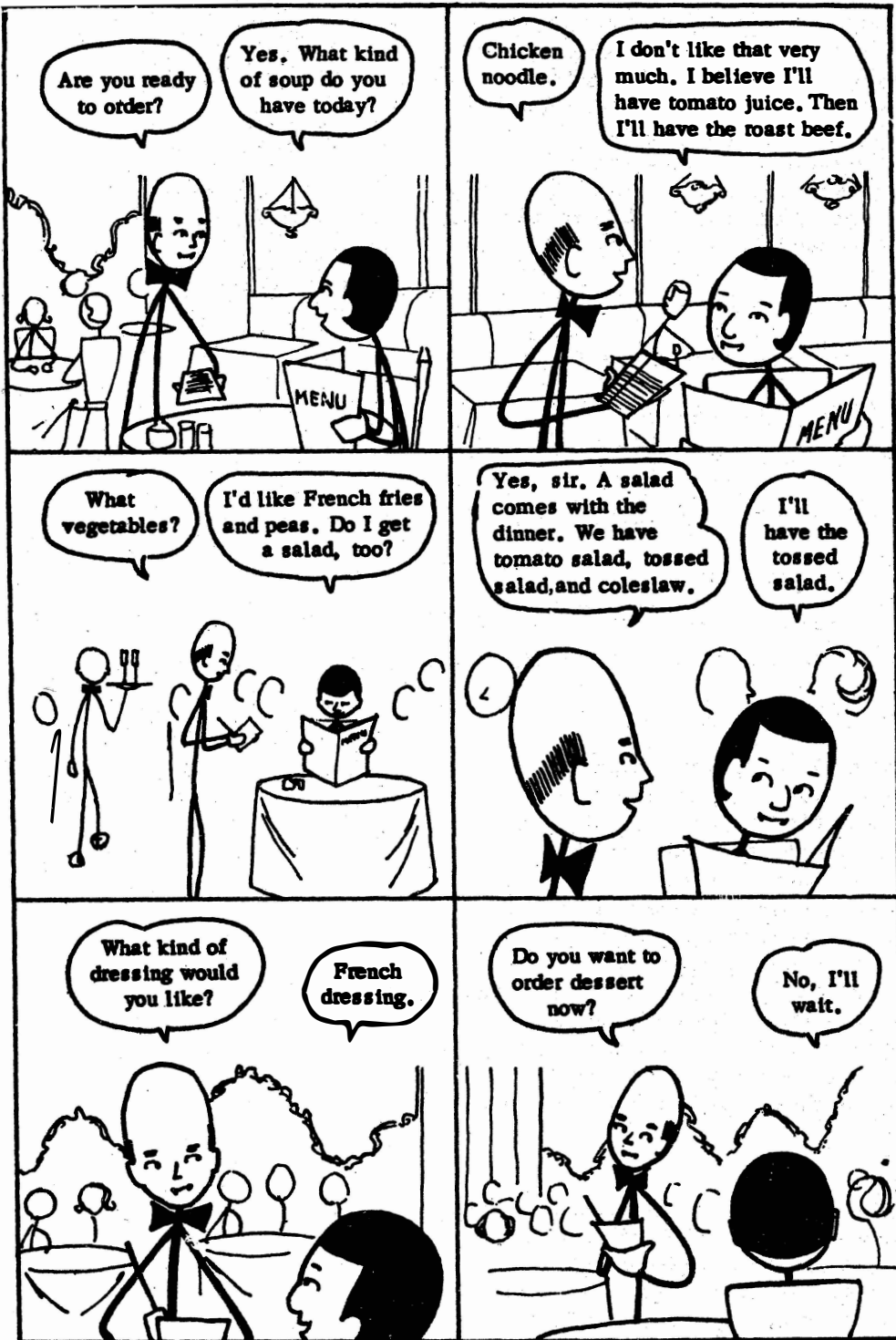
### Drill with short answers

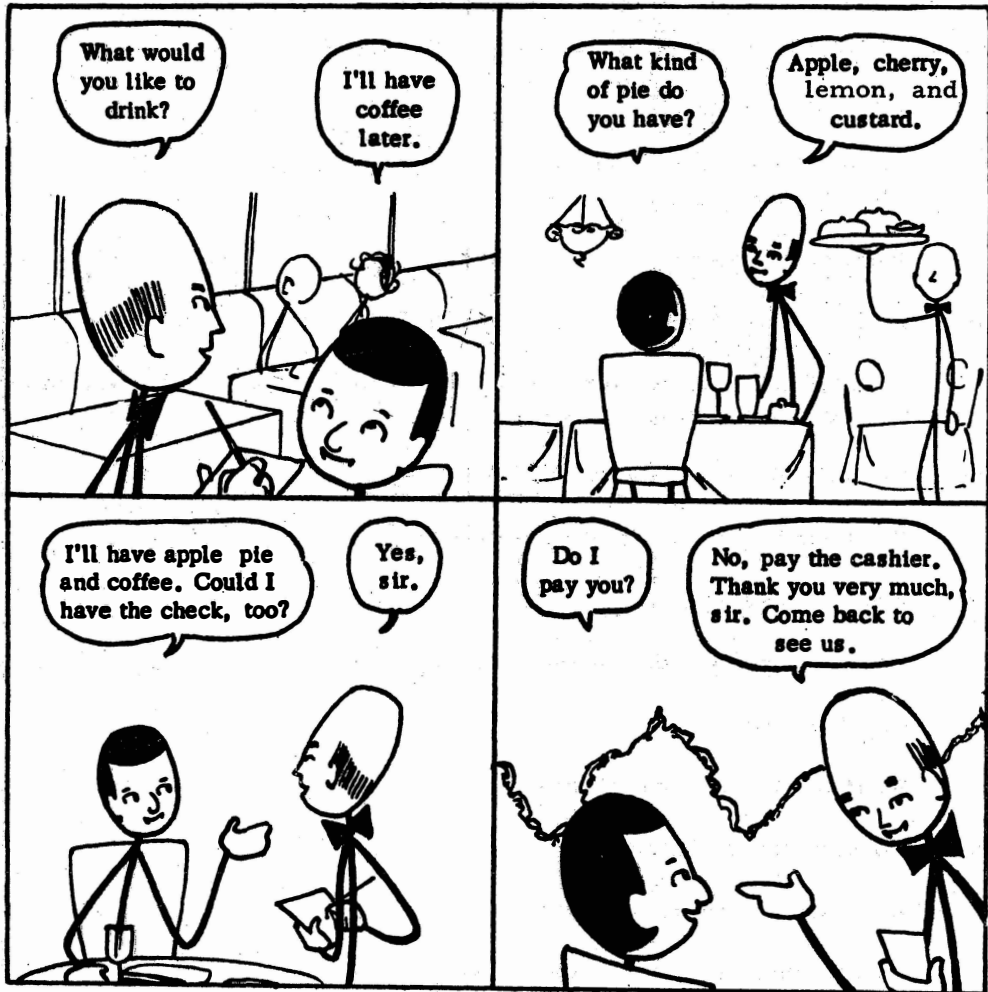
1. What do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have?
2. When do they usually look at TV?
3. When is Mrs. Andrews very busy?
4. How often do they look at TV?
5. Where is the TV set?
6. Where does Mr. Andrews like to lie?
7. Where does Mrs. Andrews sit?
8. Where do the children lie?
9. What programs do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like?
10. What stories do the children like?
11. When did they watch a comedy program?
12. What are they looking at tonight?
13. When do they usually turn off the TV?

### Intonation

1. Are you reading? What are you reading?
2. Did she finish? When did she finish?
3. Is he going now? Where is he going now?
4. Did John study? How long did John study?
5. Does she go to school every day?  
How does she go to school every day?
6. Are they coming? Why are they coming?
7. Did Peter read? Whose book did Peter read?
8. Do you ride every day? Which bus do you ride every day?

Eating in a Restaurant





## Dialog

Waiter: Are you ready to order?

Mr. Brown: Yes. What kind of soup do you have today?

Waiter: Chicken noodle.

Mr. Brown: I don't like that very much. I believe I'll have tomato juice.  
Then I'll have the roast beef.

Waiter: What vegetables?

Mr. Brown: I'd like French fries and peas. Do I get a salad, too?

Waiter: Yes, sir. A salad comes with the dinner. We have tomato salad,  
tossed salad, and coleslaw.

Mr. Brown: I'll have the tossed salad.

Waiter: What kind of dressing would you like?

Mr. Brown: French dressing.

Waiter: Do you want to order dessert now?

Mr. Brown: No, I'll wait.

Waiter: What would you like to drink?

Mr. Brown: I'll have coffee later.

Mr. Brown: What kind of pie do you have?

Waiter: Apple, cherry, lemon, and custard.

Mr. Brown: I'll have apple pie and coffee. Could I have the check, too?

Waiter: Yes, sir.

Mr. Brown: Do I pay you?

Waiter: No, pay the cashier. Thank you very much, sir. Come back to see us.

## Reading

## Do It Yourself

People who come to the United States from other countries where labor is cheap are often surprised to see all the things that Americans do for themselves. Americans often wash their own cars, cut their own grass, paint and repair their own houses inside and out, and make and repair furniture.

We sell many products to people who do things themselves. An example is inexpensive furniture which is put together and painted by the person who buys it. There are many products which make it easy to do things. An example of these is a kind of wallpaper that doesn't need paste, but sticks to the wall when it is put there.

Why do Americans "do it themselves"? One reason is that labor is expensive in the United States. Many people can't pay high prices to have work done. Another reason is the increased amount of leisure time that many Americans now have. People who work forty hours a week, and people who are retired have a lot of free time. Many of these people like to spend part of their free time making things, or doing things in their house, apartment, or yard. Another reason is that Americans have always worked with their hands. Most people in the United States enjoy doing physical work.

## New Vocabulary

labor	paste
grass	stick (verb)
paint	retired
repair	do it yourself
inexpensive	
wallpaper	

## Pattern Practice

## For Study and Drill

## Practice 1

People are surprised.

People from other countries are often surprised.

People from other countries are often surprised to see all the things that Americans do for themselves.

## Practice 2

wash their cars

Americans often wash their own cars.

## Practice 3

cut the grass

Many Americans cut their own grass.

**Practice 4**

**paint and repair**

**Many Americans paint and repair their houses.**

**Practice 5**

**inside and out**

**Lots of Americans paint and repair their own houses, inside and out.**

**Practice 6**

**many products**

**make it easy**

**Many products make it easy to do things.**

**Practice 7**

**Labor is expensive.**

**Labor is expensive in the United States.**

**Practice 8**

**People can't pay.**

**Many people can't pay high prices.**

**Many people can't pay high prices to have work done.**

**Practice 9**

**forty hours a week**

**People work forty hours a week.**

**People who work forty hours a week have a lot of free time.**

**Practice 10**

**retired**

**People who are retired have a lot of free time.**

**Practice 11**

**like to spend their time**

**People like to spend their time making things.**

**Many people like to spend their free time working in their house or yard.**

**Practice 12**

**work with the hands**

**Americans have always worked with their hands.**



## Vocabulary Practice

1. LABOR  
 Labor is expensive in the United States.  
 The cost of labor is high.  
 ( Labor unions are strong in the United States. )
2. GRASS  
 The grass in the yard has grown tall.  
 When are you going to cut the grass?  
 The grass needs cutting.
3. PAINT  
 What color are you going to paint the walls?  
 He's painting his house.  
 They painted one room green and another room blue.
4. REPAIR  
 This step needs to be repaired.  
 Who repairs your television set?  
 He has to get his car repaired.
5. INEXPENSIVE  
 Unpainted furniture is inexpensive.  
 This restaurant is inexpensive and very good.  
 I want to look at some inexpensive suits.
6. WALLPAPER  
 We need new wallpaper in this room.  
 Let's take the wallpaper off and paint the walls.  
 Can wallpaper be repaired?
7. PASTE  
 This wallpaper doesn't need paste.  
 The children are playing with scissors, paste, and colored paper.  
 Get some paste at the drugstore, please.
8. STICK  
 Be sure to stick the stamp on the letter.  
 This envelope won't stick.  
 It was stuck on with paste.
9. RETIRED  
 After working for the company for twenty years, he retired.  
 People usually retire at the age of sixty-five.  
 Has he retired yet?
10. DO-IT-YOURSELF  
 "Do it yourself jobs" are often fun to do.  
 Do you think you'd like to do it yourself?  
 Many people like "do-it-yourself" work.

EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

1. Verb Phrase Review

1. The boys go to school every day.
2. They went to school yesterday.
3. They are going to school now.
4. Do you usually work in the morning?
5. Did you work yesterday morning?
6. Are you working now?
7. Miss Chase doesn't often look at television.
8. She didn't look at television yesterday.
9. She isn't looking at television now.
10. We never go by bus.
11. We didn't go by bus last week.
12. We aren't going by bus today.

2. Question Word Review

1. Do you study every day?  
Yes, I do.  
How long do you study every day?  
Two hours.
2. Did he study last night?  
Yes, he did.  
How many lessons did he study last night?  
Two.
3. Are you reading now?  
Yes, we are.  
What book are you reading now?  
A new one.
4. Did they study last night?  
Yes, they did.  
Which lesson did they study last night?  
The first lesson.
5. Is she driving to school?  
Yes, she is.  
Whose car is she driving to school?  
Her friend's car.

3. Grammar Drills and Exercises

- a. Question Words: Fill the blanks with the question word suggested by the phrase.

(1) In the evening.

\_\_\_\_\_ do you like to study?

(2) Adventure stories.

\_\_\_\_\_ do you like to see on TV?

- ( 3 ) In the living room.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ do you watch TV?
- ( 4 ) A comedy show.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ did you listen to last night?
- ( 5 ) All-Star Theater.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ is your favorite program?
- ( 6 ) In the living room.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ are the sofa and chair?

b. Make Questions with Question Words

- ( 1 ) We studied last night.  
 What did we study last night?
- ( 2 ) He is going now.  
 Where \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 3 ) He lived on Adams Street last year.  
 When \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 4 ) Jane had a party at her home.  
 Where \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 5 ) Alfred wants to go to Philadelphia to see a doctor.  
 Why \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 6 ) He took a long walk last night.  
 How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 7 ) My friend borrowed a book yesterday.  
 Whose book \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 8 ) Patricia is practicing her English pronunciation.  
 Who \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 9 ) I want to buy a sport shirt.  
 What kind of shirt \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 10 ) This building has many offices.  
 How many offices \_\_\_\_\_ ?

c. Supply the Proper Question Word

John does his homework every night. He does it carefully because he wants to learn English.

- ( 1 ) \_\_\_\_\_ does John do every night?
- ( 2 ) \_\_\_\_\_ does John do his homework every night?
- ( 3 ) \_\_\_\_\_ does John do his homework very carefully?
- ( 4 ) \_\_\_\_\_ does John do his homework?

d. Use the Proper Adverbs: every day, yesterday, now.

- ( 1 ) Does the policeman usually work \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 2 ) Is Don's brother living in New York \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 3 ) Did any letters come \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 4 ) Are you studying your English lesson \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 5 ) Robert and his friend go downtown \_\_\_\_\_ .
- ( 6 ) We didn't go to the bank \_\_\_\_\_ .
- ( 7 ) Is it raining \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- ( 8 ) We didn't see any of our friends at school \_\_\_\_\_ .
- ( 9 ) Mr. Crandall usually rides the bus to work \_\_\_\_\_ .
- (10) Are you reading the front section of the newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ ?

e. Make Questions

Example: I often ride a streetcar to school.  
Which streetcar do you ride?

- (1) Peter is reading a book.  
Which book \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- (2) My friend often goes to the movies.  
What movie theater \_\_\_\_\_ to?
- (3) Mary found a brown hat yesterday.  
Whose hat \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- (4) We are studying lesson five today.  
Which lesson \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?
- (5) He wrote five letters yesterday.  
How many letters \_\_\_\_\_ now?

f. Use Question Words

- (1) He's in his office.  
\_\_\_\_\_ is Mr. Randolph?
- (2) At 3:00 p. m.  
\_\_\_\_\_ time is the next plane for San Francisco?
- (3) At 2:00 p. m.  
\_\_\_\_\_ do the banks close every day?

- (4) He has some business there.  
\_\_\_\_\_ did Stuart go to Boston?
- (5) Once a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_ often do they go to the movies?
- (6) The N-6 bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_ bus goes to the station?
- (7) Several friends.  
\_\_\_\_\_ did you meet at the dance last night?

g. Special Expression Drill: Turn on, Turn off

- ( 1 ) It's dark in here; please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the light.
- ( 2 ) The sun is shining; turn \_\_\_\_\_ the light.
- ( 3 ) Let's listen to some music; turn \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.
- ( 4 ) I want to sleep; please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.
- ( 5 ) It's cold in here; please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the heat.
- ( 6 ) It's hot in here; please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the heat.
- ( 7 ) Let's look at television; turn the television \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 8 ) I'm too tired to look at television; turn it \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 9 ) It's too warm in here; let's turn the fan \_\_\_\_\_.
- (10) It's getting cold in here; turn the fan \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Drills in Forming Questions

- a. Change these statements to questions. Begin each question with "How Many".

Example: He has a television set.  
How many television sets does he have?

- (1) The chair is in the living room.
- (2) There is one clock in the room.
- (3) The books are on the floor.
- (4) There are many chairs in the living room.
- (5) There are three bedrooms in the house.
- (6) There are two cars in the garage.
- (7) There are several books on the table.
- (8) There are some coffee cups on the table.
- (9) There are two pencils on the sofa.

- b. Change these sentences to questions. Begin each question with the question word in parentheses.

Example: He lives in Philadelphia. (Where)  
Where does he live?

- ( 1) The children lie on the floor. (Where)
- ( 2) They watch TV every night. (When)
- ( 3) They don't like coffee. (Why)
- ( 4) They come by bus. (How)
- ( 5) She is studying English. (What)
- ( 6) They studied last night. (When)
- ( 7) I'm going for some paper. (Why)
- ( 8) The train arrives at five o'clock. (What time)
- ( 9) Mr. Brown is a teacher. (Who)
- (10) They are going to the next base. (When)

- c. Change these statements to questions. Select one of these question words: When, Where, How, How much, What time, etc.

- ( 1) He lives in Venezuela.
- ( 2) The plane arrives at eight.
- ( 3) My friends came at twelve.
- ( 4) We went to school yesterday.
- ( 5) He studies French.
- ( 6) He teaches English.
- ( 7) I usually go by bus.
- ( 8) I like to travel by plane.
- ( 9) Mr. Black often goes by car.
- (10) They always go by plane.

- d. Change these sentences to questions. Begin each question with the question word in parentheses.

Example: He left at noon. (What time)  
What time did he leave?

- ( 1) He bought his books at the store. (Where)
- ( 2) There were many chairs in the living room. (How many)
- ( 3) The book had two interesting stories. (How many)
- ( 4) He paid two dollars for it. (How much)
- ( 5) They left by bus. (How)
- ( 6) He sat on the floor. (Where)
- ( 7) He called to speak to me. (Why)
- ( 8) They turned it on at eight. (When)
- ( 9) They often watched comedies. (What)
- (10) The children lay on the floor. (Where)

- e. Change these statements to questions. Select one of these question words: When, Where, How, Who, How much, What time, etc.

- ( 1) He liked to lie on the sofa.
- ( 2) He studied all evening.
- ( 3) He read two books.

- ( 4) They looked at TV.
- ( 5) They liked comedies.
- ( 6) They sat on the sofa.
- ( 7) He said he was busy.
- ( 8) They lived in Spain a year.
- ( 9) He left early.
- (10) She listened to the news.
- (11) It rained all night.
- (12) Last night he watched his favorite program.

5. Grammar Drill: Modals

a. Fill the blank with the correct modal form.

- ( 1) Can you go to the movies tonight?  
No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 2) Will they see a good picture?  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 3) Should we finish the lesson quickly?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 4) May we begin the text now?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 5) Must he finish his homework before dinner?  
Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 6) Should they hurry?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 7) Will the teacher be late to class?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 8) Should they make mistakes?  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- ( 9) Can we leave early?  
Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.
- (10) Will the class finish before lunch time?  
Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.
- (11) Will the movie finish before 11:00?  
No, it \_\_\_\_\_.
- (12) Must the workers hurry?  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- (13) Can you come soon?  
Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- (14) Will they arrive after dinner?  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- (15) Should we think about the lesson?

**b. Change the affirmative statements to negative questions.**

- (1) They should hurry and finish the lesson.
- (2) We will make many mistakes.
- (3) You can speak English very well.
- (4) John should begin his lessons before dinner.
- (5) Mary will begin her lessons after dinner.
- (6) They may finish very soon.
- (7) I will have a chance to see a good movie
- (8) You must think about your lessons.

**6. Some Irregular Verbs**

begin	beginning	began	begun
cost	costing	cost	cost
cut	cutting	cut	cut
hear	hearing	heard	heard
lie	lying	lay	lain
make	making	made	made
mean	meaning	meant	meant
pay	paying	paid	paid
ring	ringing	rang	rung
sell	selling	sold	sold
sit	sitting	sat	sat
stick	sticking	stuck	stuck
tell	telling	told	told
take place	taking place	took place	taken place
think about	thinking about	thought about	thought about



## TAPE 1208A

Listen to the following conversation.

Do you want to look at television tonight?  
Well, there's nothing interesting tonight.  
But turn it on if you want to.

I want to see that story about space travel.  
Oh, I forgot that was on tonight.  
I'd like to see it too.

It comes on at nine o'clock.  
Is there anything else you want to see?

No, nothing in particular.  
Later on, I want to see the news.  
That's fine.

Now let's listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to the following.

Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a television set. They enjoy watching TV. They don't watch it during the day. Mr. Andrews is at work. The children are at school. Mrs. Andrews is too busy. But they look at TV programs almost every evening. They turn on TV after dinner.

The TV set is in the living room. Mr. Andrews likes to lie on the sofa to watch TV. Mrs. Andrews sits in her favorite chair. The children often lie on the floor. The children like adventure stories. Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like comedy shows.

Now let's listen to it again and repeat it.

Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a television set.

They enjoy watching TV.

They don't watch it during the day.

Mr. Andrews is at work.

The children are at school.

Mrs. Andrews is too busy to watch TV.

But they look at TV almost every evening.

They turn on TV after dinner.

The TV set is in the living room.

Mr. Andrews likes to lie on the sofa to watch TV.

Mrs. Andrews sits in her favorite chair.

The children often lie on the floor.

The children like adventure stories.

Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like comedy shows.

Last night they watched a comedy program.

Tonight they are watching an adventure story.

Tomorrow they will see another comedy.

They usually turn off TV at eleven o' clock.

Now let's practice these vocabulary exercises. Listen and repeat.

comes on - goes off

comes on at nine

goes off at ten

That program comes on at nine.

That station goes off at ten.

What comes on at eight?

What time do the cartoons come on?

The program just went off.

nothing in particular (special)

We're thinking about nothing in particular.

Do you have something special in mind?

No, nothing in particular.

What are you watching on TV? Something special?

Nothing in particular.

a set

a set of good books

a set of glasses

She is buying a bedroom set.

We got a dinner set for a present.

Mr. Andrews has a TV set.

Listen to some questions beginning with question words. Then listen to the answers.  
Now repeat them.

Who has a TV set?

The Andrews family has a television set.

Who enjoys watching programs on it?

Everybody enjoys watching programs on TV.

Who usually watches it during the day?  
Nobody watches it during the day.

Why don't they watch it during the day?  
The children are in school.  
Mrs. Andrews is too busy to watch it.  
Mr. Andrews is at work.

How often do they look at TV programs?  
They look at TV programs every night.

When do they look at it most?  
They usually look at programs in the evening.

When do they turn on the set?  
They turn it on after dinner.

How long do they leave the set on?  
They leave it on until eleven.

When can the children study their lessons?  
They must study before dinner.

Where do the Andrews have their set?  
They have it in the living room.

Why do they have it in the living room?  
There is room for everybody there.

Where does Mr. Andrews like to sit?  
He likes to lie on the sofa.

Where does Mrs. Andrews like to sit?  
She likes to sit in her favorite chair.

Where do the children sit?  
They like to lie on the floor.

Who likes the adventure stories best?  
The children like adventure stories best.

What do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews prefer?  
They like comedy shows best.

Listen to these statements. Then change them to questions. Then repeat the correct responses.

Example: Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a TV set.  
Do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a TV set?  
Do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews have a TV set?

They enjoy watching TV.

Do they enjoy watching TV?

They watch TV during the day.

Do they watch TV during the day?

Mr. Andrews is at work during the day.

Is Mr. Andrews at work during the day?

Mrs. Andrews is too busy to watch TV.

Is Mrs. Andrews too busy to watch TV?

They watch TV programs in the evening.

Do they watch TV programs in the evening?

They turn on the set after dinner.

Do they turn on the set after dinner?

The TV set is in the living room.

Is the TV set in the living room?

Mr. Andrews likes to lie on the sofa.

Does Mr. Andrews like to lie on the sofa?

Mrs. Andrews likes to sit in her favorite chair.

Does Mrs. Andrews like to sit in her favorite chair?

The children often lie on the floor.

Do the children often lie on the floor?

They like adventure stories.

Do they like adventure stories?

Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like comedy shows.

Do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like comedy shows?

They turn off the TV set at eleven.

Do they turn off the TV set at eleven?

**Listen to these questions and answers. Then repeat them.**

**Do you like to watch TV?**

**Yes, I like to watch TV.**

**Do you prefer to listen to music?**

**Yes, we prefer to listen to music.**

**Will you turn on the TV at seven?**

**Yes, I'll turn it on at seven.**

**Will a good program come on at seven?**

**Yes, a good program will come on at seven.**

**Do you expect a story on space travel?**

**Yes, we expect a story on space travel.**

**Does Henry expect to see the news later?**

**Yes, he expects to see the news later.**

**Is there anything interesting on TV tonight?**

**No, there's nothing interesting on TV tonight.**

**Do the students like to watch TV?**

**Yes, the students like to watch TV.**

**Do they watch it every night?**

**No, they don't watch it every night.**

**Why don't they?**

**They have to study English.**

**When do they have time to watch TV?**

**They have time Saturday and Sunday nights.**

**Are they watching TV now?**

**No, they aren't looking at TV now.**

**What are they doing?**

**They are listening to a tape now.**

**Why are they doing that?**

**They need to learn English quickly.**

**Will they be able to speak soon?**

**Yes, they will, if they speak a lot.**

**Are they repeating everything they hear?**

**Yes, they are repeating everything.**

Let's practice the use of some new words and expressions. Repeat what you hear.

own, owns, owner

Americans wash their own cars.

Do you own a car?

This is my own book, not yours.

Do you live in your own home?

No, I don't own a home, I rent.

Who is the owner of the car in the accident?

Americans often wash their own clothes.

Women do their own hair.

He's a rich man. He owns a theater.

He's the owner of the Metropolitan.

John does his own yard work.

Mary's own cat bit her.

Many Americans still grow much of their own food.

## TAPE 1208B

Listen to the following conversation.

Waiter: Are you ready to order?

Mr. Brown: Yes. What kind of soup do you have today?

Waiter: Chicken noodle.

Mr. Brown: I don't like that very much.  
I believe I'll have tomato juice.  
Then I'll have the roast beef.

Waiter: What vegetables?

Mr. Brown: I'd like French fries and peas.  
Do I get a salad, too?

Waiter: Yes, sir. A salad comes with the dinner.  
We have tomato salad, tossed salad, and coleslaw.

Mr. Brown: I'll have the tossed salad.

Waiter: What kind of dressing would you like?

Mr. Brown: French dressing.

Waiter: Do you want to order dessert now?

Mr. Brown: No, I'll wait.

Waiter: What would you like to drink?

Mr. Brown: I'll have coffee later.

Mr. Brown: What kind of pie do you have?

Waiter: Apple, cherry, lemon, and custard.

Mr. Brown: I'll have apple pie and coffee.  
Could I have the check, too?

Waiter: Yes, sir.

Mr. Brown: Do I pay you?

Waiter: No, pay the cashier.  
Thank you very much, sir.  
Come back to see us.

Now we'll listen and repeat everything.

Practice this vocabulary drill. Listen and repeat.

vegetables

Peas are vegetables.

Potatoes and beans are vegetables.

We usually cook vegetables.

meats

Mutton, beef, and chicken are meats.

We roast, fry, or stew meats.

salads

lettuce and tomato salad

We use lettuce and tomatoes in our salads.

We don't usually cook salads.

We cook macaroni and eggs for salads.

fruits

Apples, oranges, and bananas are fruits.

We eat fruits both raw and cooked.

We use fruits in salads and desserts.

pastries

Cakes and cookies are pastries.

Pastries are good with coffee.

We eat pastries for dessert.

beverages (drinks)

Milk, tea, and coffee are beverages.

Americans usually have beverages with their meals.

Coffee is America's favorite beverage.

Now we will listen to a dialog between two people in a cafeteria. Repeat everything.

- A: Are you ready to eat?  
Then let me invite you to a meal in a cafeteria.  
First we stand in line.
- B: How interesting.  
I've never eaten in a cafeteria before.
- A: Now we take a tray, knife, fork, and spoon.
- B: Good, I'll take a tray, knife, fork, and spoon.
- A: Look at the salads.  
They have many kinds.  
What would you like?
- B: I don't know.  
There's so many.
- A: Let me suggest lettuce and tomatoes,  
or maybe combination salad.



- B: Combination will be fine.
- A: Give me the same.  
Put French dressing on them.
- A: Soups are vegetable, tomato, or chicken.
- B: Let me have chicken, please.
- A: I'll take vegetable soup.  
Just look at those meats.
- B: Don't they look good?
- A: I want roast beef and gravy.
- B: And I want fried chicken.
- A: What vegetables would you care for?
- B: I would like peas and squash.
- A: Give me potatoes and peas.
- B: There is so much of everything to eat.
- A: What would you like for dessert?
- B: Whatever you suggest.
- A: Give us apple pie with ice cream.
- B: Good, and lemonade to drink.
- A: I'll take black coffee.  
Now, let's find a seat and eat.
- B: What a big place and so many people!

Let's listen to some questions and answers. Repeat everything.

What kind of soup do you like best?  
I like vegetable soup best.

What kind of salad do you prefer?  
We prefer a combination salad.

Which meat would you like?  
I would like the beef stew.

What vegetables shall I serve you?  
Corn, beans, and potatoes, please.

What kind of dessert would you like?  
We would like to have lemon pie.

What would you like to drink?  
Just give me iced tea.

Which table shall we go to?  
Let's sit in a booth.

What can we talk about?  
We can talk about the dance.

Who are you taking to the dance?  
I'm asking Mary Smith.  
She's my favorite girl friend here.

Who are you going with?  
I'm hoping to go with my friend.

Who is that?  
She's Nellie Jones.

Who do we pay for the food?  
We'll pay the cashier as we leave.

Now you will hear some statements and questions. Listen and repeat.

John bought three new books.  
Did he buy three new books?  
How many books did he buy?  
He bought three new books.

Robert is buying two suits.  
Is he buying two suits?  
How many suits is he buying?  
He's buying two suits.

We'll see two or three good movies.  
Will we see two or three good movies?  
How many good movies will we see?  
We'll see two or three good movies.

He has already drunk five glasses of beer.  
Has he already drunk five glasses of beer?  
How many glasses of beer has he already drunk?  
He has already drunk five glasses of beer.

We were buying five pounds of sugar.  
Were we buying five pounds of sugar?  
How much sugar were we buying?  
We were buying five pounds of sugar.

That man has a lot of money.  
 Does he have much money?  
 How much money does he have?  
 He has a lot of money.

I expect to live a long time.  
 Do you expect to live a long time?  
 How long do you expect to live?  
 I expect to live a long time.

Robert has waited for two hours.  
 Has he waited for two hours?  
 How long has he waited?  
 He has waited for two hours.

Mary should take three bags.  
 Should she take three bags?  
 How many bags should she take?  
 She should take three bags.

We ate a lot of good food.  
 Did we eat much food?  
 How much food did we eat?  
 We ate a lot of food.

Listen to some common American verb usage. Repeat everything.

Will you call up your friends in Seattle?  
 Well, we hope to get in touch with them.  
 Good, I hope you will look them up.

What time did you wake up today?  
 We woke up at 5 o'clock.

I got up late this morning.  
 I turned on the lights at 6 o'clock

What took place next?  
 I turned on the radio to get the news.  
 Then I turned on the electric coffee pot.

Has Robert tried on his shirt?  
 No, he hasn't tried it on yet.

Will you please turn off the lights?  
 I have already turned them off.

Did you look over the new English book?  
 No, I'm looking forward to doing it.

## TAPE 1208C

Listen to the following conversation.

- A: What are you doing this weekend?  
The weather is very pleasant.  
Could we take a trip into the country?
- B: I would like to  
but I have too much work to do.  
I am very busy around the house.  
I have to repair my house.  
Later I plan to paint it.  
We also need to cut the grass and wash the car.  
My wife is painting some new furniture.
- A: Why is she painting new furniture?
- B: We often buy inexpensive furniture.  
We then paint it ourselves.
- A: Americans always surprise me.  
They do many things for themselves.  
Why do they do this?
- B: Labor is too expensive in the United States.  
Most people cannot pay to have the work done.  
Most Americans also have much leisure time.  
They like to work with their hands.  
They enjoy doing some physical labor.
- A: Many of these things are hard to do.  
How can so many people do this work for themselves?
- B: There are many products to make work easy.  
For example, there is the furniture that my wife paints.  
They put it together in the factory  
but they don't paint it.  
We can buy wallpaper that doesn't need paste.  
It sticks to the wall when you put it there.  
There are many such products.  
We can also buy books  
which tell us how to do things ourselves.
- A: That sounds interesting.  
Maybe I can visit you  
and help do some of these things.

Now we'll listen to the conversation again and repeat what we hear.

Now let's practice the use of some new words and expressions.

too

I can't go.  
 I have too much work.  
 Labor is too expensive  
 I have to do it myself.  
 I'm going to town.  
 Do you want to go too?  
 The car costs too much money.  
 I cannot buy it.

around

I have work to do around the house.  
 We work around home on Saturday.  
 Have you seen John around here?  
 They walked around the building.

repair

I repaired a chair last night.  
 Who repaired your car?  
 They'll repair the recorder tomorrow.  
 This man repairs shoes.

paint

How often do you paint your house?  
 Bob painted his car last week.  
 We'll paint the garage brown.  
 What color are you painting this wall?

furniture

Chairs and tables are furniture.  
 Is your furniture new?  
 We like modern furniture.  
 Good furniture is usually expensive

surprise

Did you expect him  
 or were you surprised?  
 The things you do surprise me.  
 The book surprised me;  
 it was very interesting.  
 It will surprise him when I arrive.

without

He came to school without his coat.  
 Did you come to lab without your tape?  
 We can't learn English without speaking it.  
 You cannot buy things without money.

leisure time

Americans have much leisure time.  
 Older people have much leisure time.  
 If I work long hours,  
 I have little leisure time.  
 We make things in our leisure time.

labor

Labor is expensive in the United States.

The cost of labor is high.

We have many labor unions here.

Do you do much physical labor?

products

The factories produce many products.

We buy many products to make life easier.

What products do you need?

Books, pencils, cars, and bread are products.

Let's practice changing some statements to questions. Listen to these statements and questions. Then repeat them.

The weather is very pleasant today.

Is the weather pleasant today?

I have a lot of work to do today.

Do you have a lot of work to do today?

He had to cut the grass yesterday.

Did he have to cut the grass yesterday?

They have always done these things.

Have they always done these things?

He paid a lot of money.

Did he pay a lot of money?

John helps me with my work.

Does John help you with your work?

Nick has ordered some pie.

Has Nick ordered some pie?

We like French dressing on salad.

Do you like French dressing on salad?

You told us not to go.

Did you tell us not to go?

That book sounds interesting.

Does that book sound interesting?

## SOUND AND INTONATION

## The "And Alternative" Pattern

Listen.

The "and sequence" pattern is the same as the "or alternative" pattern.

(coffee ↑ , tea ↑ and milk ↓ )

Listen and Repeat.

I'll order coffee, ↑ tea, ↑ and milk. ↓

I have ordered tomato salad, ↑ tossed salad, ↑ and coleslaw. ↓

I'm ordering chicken, ↑ ham, ↑ and steak. ↓

I have ordered apple, ↑ cherry, ↑ and lemon custard. ↓

He's ordering coffee, ↑ tea, ↑ and milk. ↓

They're ordering tomato salad, ↑ tossed salad, ↑ and coleslaw. ↓

He's ordering chicken, ↑ ham, ↑ and steak. ↓

They're ordering apple, ↑ cherry, ↑ and lemon custard. ↓

Listen.

Drill on these final consonant clusters. Listen and repeat.

## Plural nouns

mapsstreetsweeks

## 3rd Person Singular – Present Tense

stopsletsmakestakestalkslaughs

## Verbs - Past Tense

stoppedkeptwalkedleftpassedwishedreachedcashed

## Plural Nouns

roadsleadseggsridesjobsleaves

## 3rd Person Singular — Present Tense

comesfeelshears

## Verb — Past Tense

livedbreathedarrivedraineddescribedturnedcalledsmiled



## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures**Special Expressions:**

Look forward to  
Too ... either

Count nouns and Mass nouns

Direct and Indirect Objects

Irregular Verbs

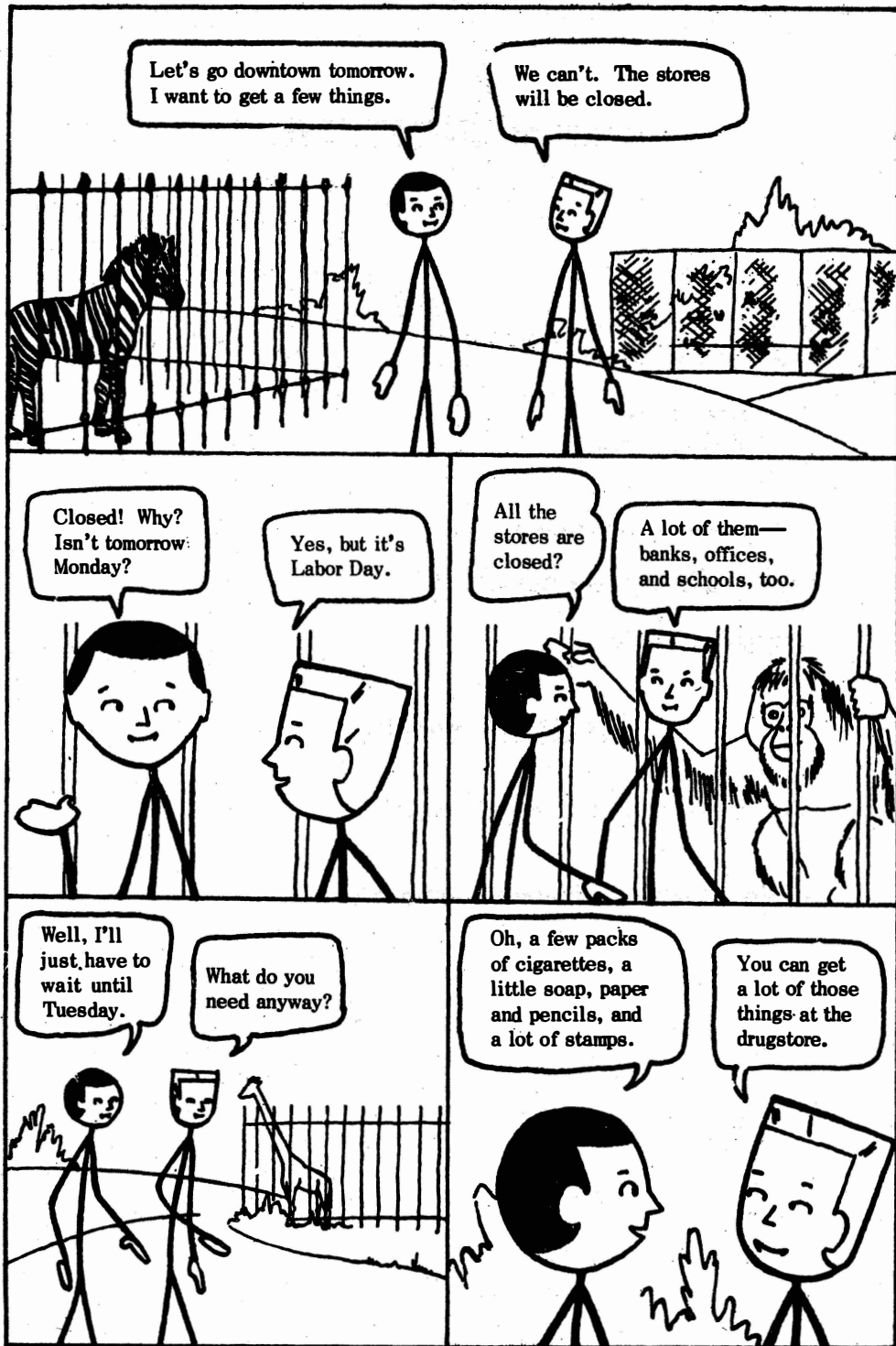
Sound and Intonation

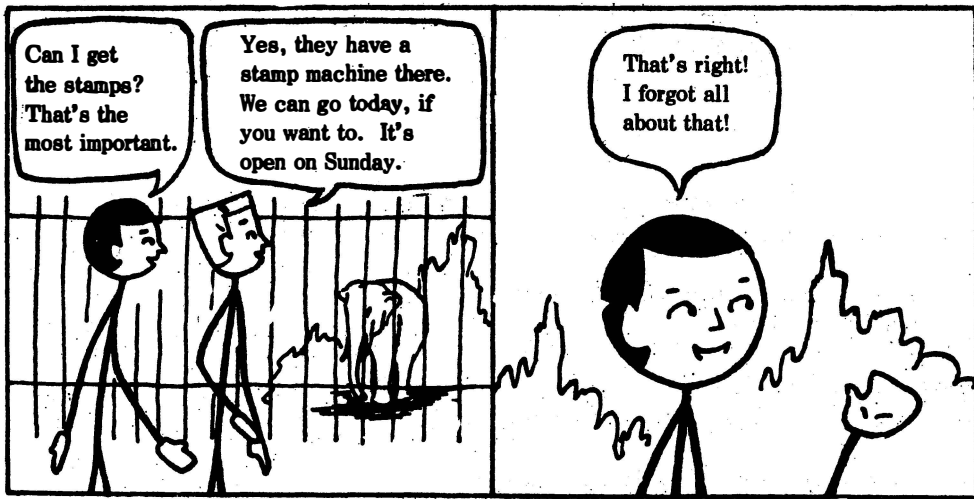
Use of stress to convey meaning

Initial consonant clusters (continued)

Medial consonant clusters

Talking About a Trip to Town





## UNIT 1209

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

A: Let's go downtown tomorrow. I want to get a few things.

B: We can't. The stores will be closed.

A: Closed! Why? Isn't tomorrow Monday?

B: Yes, but it's Labor Day.

A: All the stores are closed?

B: A lot of them— banks, offices, and schools, too.

A: Well, I'll just have to wait until Tuesday.

B: What do you need anyway?

A: Oh, a few packs of cigarettes, a little soap, paper and pencils, and a lot of stamps.

B: You can get a lot of those things at the drugstore.

A: Can I get the stamps? That's the most important.

B: Yes, they have a stamp machine there. We can go today, if you want to. It's open on Sunday.

A: That's right! I forgot all about that!

## New Vocabulary

downtown

tomorrow

things

stores

Monday

Labor Day

banks

offices

schools

restaurants

places

Tuesday

packs

cigarettes

soap

paper

pencils

stamps

drugstore

stamp machine

Sunday

## Reading

## Holidays

Everybody enjoys holidays. We look forward to them. Most people don't have to go to work on holidays. Of course, some people do have to work on these days. Doctors and dentists, bus drivers, and waitresses in restaurants often have to go to their jobs. They have other days free, however.

Stores, banks, post offices, businesses, and schools are closed on legal holidays. The most important holidays are New Year's Day, the Fourth of July, Labor Day (in September), Thanksgiving Day (in November), and Christmas (in December). There are different celebrations for the different holidays.

## New Vocabulary

doctor	holiday
dentist	close
job	enjoy
bank	work
school	important
state	different
office	other

## Word Drill

- doctors  
many doctors  
dentists  
many dentists  
Many doctors and dentists have important jobs.  
Many doctors and dentists had important jobs.  
Many doctors and dentists will have important jobs.
- banks  
many banks  
many banks and schools  
many banks, schools, and offices  
There are many banks, schools, and offices in large cities.
- holidays  
on holidays  
close  
offices close  
On holidays most offices close.  
On holidays most offices will close
- state  
state holidays  
states  
different states  
in different states  
There are state holidays in different states.

5. enjoy  
we enjoy  
the holidays  
all the holidays  
We enjoy all the holidays.  
We enjoyed all the holidays.  
We'll enjoy all the holidays.
6. other  
other holidays  
other states  
in other states  
There are other holidays in other states.
7. but  
some work, but other people don't  
Some people work on holidays, but other people don't.  
Some people worked on holidays, but other people didn't.
8. but  
ride a bus  
ride a streetcar  
You ride a bus, but I ride a streetcar.  
You rode a bus, but I rode a streetcar.  
You'll ride a bus, but I'll ride a streetcar.

### Special Expressions

#### LOOK FORWARD TO

1. I look forward to the holidays.
2. We looked forward to our vacations.
3. They look forward to their trip.
4. He looked forward to your party.
5. He looks forward to the weekend.
6. She looks forward to the dance.
7. Do you look forward to New Year's Day?
8. Yes, I do. I look forward to it very much.
9. Does your friend look forward to his vacation?
10. Yes, he does. He looks forward to it very much.

### Drills on the Reading

#### Drill 1 - Fluency Practice

1. Everybody enjoys holidays.
2. Everybody usually enjoys holidays.
3. We look forward to them.
4. We always look forward to them.
5. Most people don't work on holidays.
6. Most people don't ever work on holidays.
7. Some people will work on holidays.
8. Some people usually work on holidays.
9. Doctors will go to their jobs.
10. Doctors always go to their jobs.

**Drill 2 - Question and Answer Practice**

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Do dentists ever have holidays? | Yes, they often have holidays.<br>No, they never have holidays.   |
| 2. Does a waitress have holidays?  | Yes, she always has holidays.<br>No, she never has holidays.      |
| 3. Do bus drivers have holidays?   | Yes, they usually have holidays.<br>No, they never have holidays. |

**Drill 3 - Repetition Practice**

1. Different states have different holidays.
2. Different states often have different holidays.
3. We have different celebrations for different holidays.
4. We usually have different celebrations for different holidays.
5. Doctors have important jobs.
6. Doctors always have important jobs.
7. Dentists have important jobs.
8. Dentists always have important jobs.

## EXPLANATION AND DRILL STRUCTURES

1. Too, Either, But

## a. Read these sentences after the instructor.

I want steak, and I want fried chicken, too.  
 I like roast beef, but I don't like stew.  
 I don't like fish, either.

Use too when and connects affirmative statements.

John's a teacher.	James is a teacher.
John teaches.	James teaches.

John's a teacher, and James is, too.  
 John teaches, and James does, too.

Use either when and connects negative statements.

Peter's not a teacher.	Paul's not a teacher.
Peter doesn't teach.	Paul doesn't teach.

Peter's not a teacher, and Paul's not, either.  
 Peter doesn't teach, and Paul doesn't, either.

Use but to connect an affirmative statement and a negative statement.

John's a teacher, but Peter isn't.  
 James teaches, but Paul doesn't.

I'm not a doctor, but he is.  
 I drive a car, but he doesn't.  
 They work, and we do, too.

## b. Practice combining the following statements.

1. John is a teacher.      James is a teacher.  
    John is a teacher, and James is, too.
2. John drives a car.      James drives a car.  
    John drives a car, and James does, too.
3. Peter is not a teacher.      Paul is not a teacher.  
    Peter's not a teacher, and Paul's not, either.
4. Peter doesn't teach English.      Paul doesn't teach English.  
    Peter doesn't teach English, and Paul doesn't, either.



## 2. Count Nouns and Mass Nouns

Some nouns stand for things we can count. These are count nouns. Other nouns stand for things we can't count. These are mass nouns.

	with count nouns		with mass nouns	
	many		a little	
	a few		much	
		any		
		a lot of		
		some		
money:	a little money	a lot of money	some money	(mass)
dollars:	many dollars	a lot of dollars		(count)
	a few dollars			
sugar:	a little sugar	a lot of sugar	some sugar	(mass)
	much sugar			
cups:	many cups	a lot of cups	some cups	(count)
	a few cups			
paper:	a little paper	a lot of paper	some paper	(mass)
	much paper			
packs:	many packs	a lot of packs	some packs	(count)
	a few packs			

### a. Review of much, many, a lot of, a little, a few, some

much: used with mass nouns  
 much money  
 much milk  
 much coffee

many: used with count nouns  
 many pencils  
 many tapes  
 many tables

a lot of: used with both mass nouns and count nouns

a lot of money  
 a lot of pencils

any: used with both mass nouns and count nouns  
 any money  
 any books  
 any pencils  
 any sugar

a little: used with mass nouns

a little money  
a little sugar  
a little coffee

a few: used with count nouns

a few pencils  
a few tapes  
a few tables

some: used with count nouns (plural) and mass nouns

some pencils  
some sugar

b. Substitute the expression a lot of in the following.

1. Does John have MUCH money this week?
2. No, he doesn't have MUCH money.
3. Do you take MUCH sugar in your coffee?
4. No, I don't take MUCH sugar in my coffee.
5. Were there MANY people in the bank?
6. No, there weren't MANY people in the bank.
7. Do the nurses have MUCH free time?
8. No, the nurses don't have MUCH free time.
9. Did they buy MANY things yesterday?
10. No, they didn't buy MANY things yesterday.

c. Use much or many.

1. Do \_\_\_\_\_ people live in that apartment house?
2. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the kitchen?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers have \_\_\_\_\_ pages.
4. The Carters don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money.
5. There are \_\_\_\_\_ pencils over there on the desk.
6. How \_\_\_\_\_ hours do you study at night?
7. Was there \_\_\_\_\_ news in the newspaper?
8. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ people in the department store.
9. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ food in the refrigerator.
10. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ news on the radio last night.
11. John's father has \_\_\_\_\_ money.
12. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ fruit to sell?
13. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time to help you today.
14. There is \_\_\_\_\_ interesting news in the newspaper today.
15. Do they spend \_\_\_\_\_ time on their homework?

d. Use a little or a few.

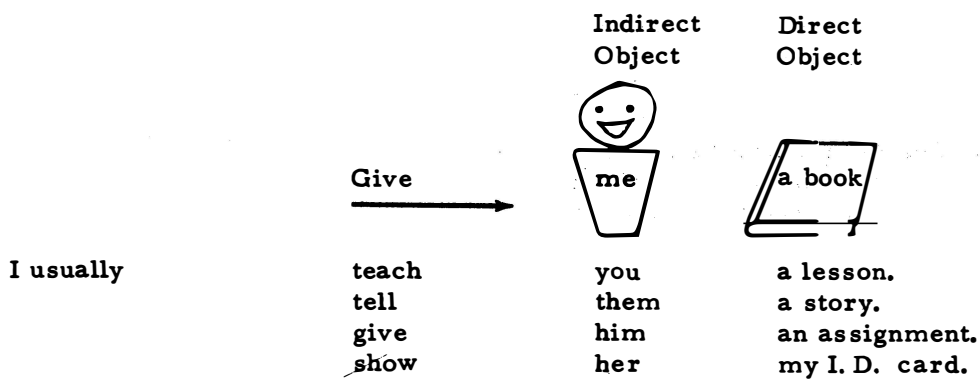
1. There were only \_\_\_\_\_ people at the party.
2. Mary needs to buy \_\_\_\_\_ new dresses.
3. She has only \_\_\_\_\_ money.
4. There was \_\_\_\_\_ news about your country on the radio.
5. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ pencils.
6. I also need \_\_\_\_\_ paper.
7. We saw \_\_\_\_\_ movies while we were in New York.
8. There are only \_\_\_\_\_ chairs in this room.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ people came late to the dance.

e. Change the following to much or many.

1. Does Mr. Thompson have A LOT OF money?
2. A LOT OF radios are very expensive.
3. Does that store sell A LOT OF books?
4. He decided to sell A LOT OF different kinds of radios.
5. The department stores sell A LOT OF expensive things.
6. They sell A LOT OF cheap things, also.
7. Did you spend A LOT OF money when you were downtown?
8. He finally decided to buy A LOT OF books, instead of just a few.

## 3. Direct and Indirect Objects

Some verbs (like hand, offer, pass, fix, show, buy, get, give, make, write, tell) often have two objects: a direct object and an indirect object. The indirect object is the person TO whom, or sometimes FOR whom, something (the direct object) is given, sent, etc.



Remember that a direct object occurs after verbs of action answering the question What? or Who (m) ?

Example: He flies a jet? (What?)  
He met the postman. (Who (m)?)

The indirect object — the person or thing TO or FOR whom something is done may be expressed in two patterns.

(1) Verb                                      Indirect Object                      Direct Object

(2) Verb              Direct Object              TO or FOR + Indirect Object

Compare these sentences:

	Indirect Object	Direct Object	TO/FOR Phrase
He always sends	me	a postcard. a postcard.	TO me.
She fixed	me	a sandwich a sandwich	FOR me.

Change the following sentences from one pattern to the other.

Example: He showed me the report. He showed the report to me.  
He's buying me a coke. He's buying a coke for me.

1. Mrs. Johnson often buys the children toys.
2. She often makes cookies for them.
3. They always send me a card for Christmas.
4. Lt. Jones shipped his wife the box.
5. Did you get him the book?
6. Please pour me a cup of coffee.
7. Shall I get you a drink of water?
8. No, thanks. Get me a coke instead.
9. The policeman gave me a traffic ticket.
10. He usually gives the class difficult assignments.

Note: If the direct object is a pronoun use the pattern with to or for.

Example: "He gave me the book." must be changed to "He gave it to me."

#### 4. Irregular verbs

catch	catching	caught	caught
mean	meaning	meant	meant
say	saying	said	said

## TAPE 1209A

Listen to this conversation.

A: Let's go downtown tomorrow.  
I want to get a few things.

B: We can't. The stores will be closed.

A: Closed! Why? Isn't tomorrow Monday?

B: Yes, but it's Labor Day.

A: All the stores will be closed?

B: A lot of them —  
also banks, offices, and schools.

A: Well, I'll just have to wait until Tuesday.

B: What do you need, anyway?

A: Oh, a few packs of cigarettes, a little soap,  
paper and pencils, and a lot of stamps.

B: You can get a lot of those things at the drugstore.

A: Can I get the stamps?  
That's the most important.

B: Yes, they have a stamp machine there.  
We can go today, if you want to.  
It's open on Sunday.

A: That's right.  
I forgot all about that.

Now listen to the conversation again and repeat it.

Listen to the following questions and answers. Then repeat them.

Where did you go last Sunday?

We went to the zoo.

What did you do there?

We just looked at the animals.

How long did you stay at the zoo?

We were there all afternoon.

What did you talk about?

We talked about holidays.

Didn't you look at the animals?

Oh yes, we saw all the animals.

Who went with you to the zoo?

Johnny Jones went with me.

We always go together.

Does this town have a good zoo?

Yes, it has lots of animals.

What was the park like?

The park is very big, with a river and trees.

There are also places to eat.

Did they have anything to ride?

Yes, they had all kinds of things to ride.

What is your favorite animal?

I like monkeys.

Did you watch the monkeys very long?

Yes, we watched them for hours.

What did you do then?

We ate supper in a restaurant.

What did you eat for supper?

We had roast meat and a salad.

The meat was cooked outdoors.

How was the meat?  
It was good.

What else did you have?  
We also had baked potatoes with butter.

When did you come back?  
We came back at 11 o'clock.

Let's practice some English sentences. Listen and repeat.

Let's go downtown tomorrow.

Let us go.  
Let's go downtown.  
Let's go to class now.  
Let's do that.  
Let's not do that.  
Let's not go downtown.  
Let's go where?  
Let's do what?

The stores are closed.

The bank was closed.  
The schools were closed too.  
The restaurant won't be closed tomorrow.  
All the stores will be closed.  
Should the banks be closed too?  
They will probably be closed also.  
What will be open tomorrow?  
The restaurants might be open tomorrow.  
Everything else will probably be closed.  
Were the drugstores closed for the holiday?  
No, all of them weren't closed.  
Some of them were open.  
When will the restaurants be closed?  
They never close.

Let's practice much, many, and a lot of, in affirmative, negative, and interrogative sentences. Listen to these sentences and repeat them.

We're looking at a lot of cars.  
We saw a lot of people yesterday.  
We have seen a lot of movies this year.  
We could see a lot of places in a month.  
We will see a lot of animals at the zoo.

They aren't eating much food today.  
 They didn't eat much meat last night.  
 They haven't eaten much food this week.  
 They can't eat much food tonight.  
 They won't eat much food tomorrow.

Are you buying many things downtown today?  
 Did you buy many shirts yesterday?  
 Have you bought many books this year?  
 Should you buy many papers each week?  
 Will you buy many drinks for the party?

Who is asking a lot of questions in class?  
 Who asked a lot of questions at the party?  
 Who has asked a lot of questions about me?  
 Who might ask a lot of questions at work?  
 Who will ask a lot of questions about English?

Where is James meeting a lot of girls tonight?  
 Where did he meet a lot of girls last night?  
 Where can he meet a lot of girls?  
 Where will he meet a lot of girls tomorrow?

Is Henry making much money now?  
 Did he make much money last year?  
 Has he made much money in the last five years?  
 Should he make much money this year?  
 Will he make very much money next year?

The student isn't making many mistakes now.  
 He didn't make many mistakes yesterday.  
 He hasn't often made mistakes in the past.  
 He may not make any mistakes this year.  
 He won't make many mistakes next year.

They are learning a lot of new words.  
 They learned a lot of new words last week.  
 They have already learned a lot of words.  
 They should learn a lot of new words this year.  
 They will learn a lot of new words next year.

Notice the question words we use with count and mass nouns. Listen to these questions and repeat them.

How many students wrote their homework?  
 How much sugar and cream do you use?  
 How many pages did you study last night?  
 How much money do you want to make?

How many teachers have new cars?  
 How much money did the car cost?  
 How many men must we teach English?  
 How much time do we have left?



How many girls are there at the party?  
 How much food and drink must we buy?  
 How many books did you read last year?  
 How much water do you drink daily?

How many of you went to the movies?  
 How much food do you need?  
 How many people are watching TV now?  
 How much paper do you need today?

Now let's practice some statements with count and mass nouns. Listen and repeat.

A lot of students wrote their homework.  
 Not many students wrote their homework.  
 No students wrote their homework.  
 Two students wrote their homework.

I use a lot of sugar and cream.  
 I don't use any sugar and cream.  
 I use only a little sugar and cream.  
 I don't use much sugar and cream.

We want to make a lot of money.  
 We don't want to make much money.  
 We want to make a lot more money.

You have a lot of time left.  
 You don't have much time left.  
 You have thirty minutes left.

We read a lot of books last year.  
 We read only a few books last year.  
 We didn't read many books last year.  
 We read ten books last year.

There are a lot of girls at the party.  
 There aren't many girls at the party.  
 There are fifty girls here.

I drink a lot of water every day.  
 I don't drink much water every day.  
 I drink little water.  
 I drink ten glasses of water every day.

They read a lot of pages last night.  
 They didn't read many pages last night.  
 They read fifty pages last night.

Not many of us went to the movies.  
 Not any of us went to the movies.  
 A lot us us went to the movies.  
 Five of us went to the movies.

We need to buy a lot of paper today.  
 We don't need to buy much paper today.  
 We need to buy a little paper.  
 We need to buy some paper.

Let's now practice some sentences. Notice that the direct object follows the verb.  
 Listen and repeat.

We want a new shirt.  
 We expect a check in the mail.  
 We need pen and paper.  
 We hope that a check comes in the mail.  
 We always plan our vacation with care.

We don't want pen and paper.  
 We don't expect a letter today.  
 We don't need more money.  
 We don't hope that you leave soon.  
 We don't always plan our vacation well.

Do you want some hot coffee?  
 Do you expect news from home?  
 Do you need new clothes?  
 Do you hope that Mary will come today?  
 Do you always plan your trips carefully?

Who wants coffee and cream?  
 Who expects Mary to come today?  
 Who needs a lot of money to have a good time?  
 Who hopes for a lot of money?  
 Who always plans his trips well?

Now let's practice the same verbs with different sentence structure. Notice these verb forms.

Mary wants to take a long trip.  
 John expects to make more money this year.  
 I need to buy a better car.  
 We hope to make a lot of new friends.  
 They plan to go on a trip to Europe.

Mary doesn't want to buy a pack of cigarettes.  
 John doesn't expect to read that book soon.  
 I don't need to take a vacation now.  
 Don't you hope to leave soon?  
 They don't plan to spend much money.

**Does Mary want to go to the movies with you?**

**Does John expect to fix his old car?**

**Do you need to see a doctor?**

**Do you hope to get money in the mail?**

**Do they plan to speak English?**

**Who wants to eat dinner with me?**

**Who expects to watch TV tonight?**

**Who needs to study harder?**

**Who hopes to go home soon?**

**Who plans to write a long letter to Mary?**

## TAPE 1209B

Listen to the following conversation.

- A: I'm looking forward to next weekend.  
I'm flying to Chicago.
- B: Isn't that a long trip for a weekend?
- A: Oh, we have a long weekend this week.  
Friday is a holiday.  
I don't have to go to school.
- B: Maybe I can go to town on Friday.  
I want to buy some things.
- A: You can't buy much on a holiday.  
Most people don't work then.  
Stores, banks, post offices, and schools close on holidays.
- B: Does anyone work on holidays?
- A: A few doctors and dentists work on holidays.  
Also restaurants and a few other businesses stay open.  
Bus drivers and taxi drivers work on these days too.  
They have other days free though.
- B:
- A: We have several holidays.  
In the winter we celebrate Christmas.  
In the summer there is the Fourth of July.  
Labor Day and Thanksgiving come in the fall.
- B: Do you celebrate all these holidays the same way?
- A: No, there are different celebrations for different holidays.  
People celebrate the Fourth of July with picnics.  
On Thanksgiving everyone eats a lot.  
And on Christmas we give each other gifts.
- B: It sounds like all of you enjoy the holidays.

Now let's do it again and repeat what we hear.

We'll now study the new vocabulary we use in this conversation. Listen to these words and sentences and then repeat them.

look forward to

We look forward to the holidays.  
Are you looking forward to your vacation?  
Yes, I'm looking forward to it very much.

weekend

We don't go to school on the weekend.  
What are you doing this weekend?  
Saturday and Sunday make up a weekend.

enjoy

Did you enjoy the party?  
We all enjoy holidays.  
Which holiday do you enjoy most?

holiday

Most people do not work on holidays.  
Do you always enjoy holidays?  
We don't have many holidays in this country.

bank

I keep my money in the bank.  
We go to the bank to cash our checks.  
In which bank do you keep your money?

dentist

A dentist works on teeth.  
The dentist fixes your teeth.  
Do you know a good dentist here?

business

Stores and banks are businesses.  
This drugstore has a lot of business.  
We don't have many businesses here.

free

When we have a free day we don't work.  
I have Friday free.  
When do you have a free day?

picnic

We enjoy picnics when the weather is good.  
On a picnic we eat in the woods.  
Do you like to go on picnics in the summer?

Let's now practice putting words together to form sentences. We will then repeat the sentences in the different tenses. Repeat what you hear.

doctors

many doctors

dentists

many dentists

Many doctors and dentists have important jobs.

Many doctors and dentists had important jobs.

Many doctors and dentists have had important jobs.

Many doctors and dentists will have important jobs.

banks

many banks

There are many banks in large cities.

There were many banks in large cities.

There have always been many banks in large cities.

There will always be many banks in large cities.

holidays

on holidays

close

offices close

On holidays most offices close.

On holidays most offices closed.

On holidays most offices have closed.

On holidays most offices will close.

enjoy

we enjoy

the holidays

all the holidays

We enjoy all the holidays.

We enjoyed all the holidays.

We've enjoyed all the holidays.

We'll enjoy all the holidays.

but

Some people work, but others don't.

Some people work on holidays, but others don't.

Some people worked on holidays, but others didn't.

Some people have worked on holidays, but others haven't.

Some people will work on holidays, but others won't.

look forward to

look forward to our vacations

We look forward to our vacations.

We looked forward to our vacations.

We have looked forward to our vacations.

We'll look forward to our vacations.

Now we'll listen to some statements and then some questions about these statements.  
Answer the questions and then repeat the correct responses.

**Example:** Everybody enjoys holidays.  
Who enjoys holidays?  
Everybody enjoys holidays.  
Everybody enjoys holidays.

Many people do not have to work on holidays.  
Who doesn't have to work on holidays?

Many people do not have to work on holidays.

Some people have to work on holidays.  
Who has to work on holidays?

Some people have to work on holidays.

Stores close on holidays.  
When do stores close?

Stores close on holidays.

Christmas and New Year's Day are important holidays.  
What are important holidays?

Christmas and New Year's Day are important holidays.

People celebrate the Fourth of July with picnics.  
How do people celebrate the Fourth of July?

People celebrate the Fourth of July with picnics.

Now we'll practice using some mass and count nouns in sentences. Listen to these sentences and repeat them.

Do many people live in this house?  
Do any people live in this house?  
Yes, a lot of people live in this house.  
No, only a few people live in this house.  
Some people live in this house.

Does your father have any money?  
Yes, my father has much money.  
Yes, but he has only a little money.  
Yes, he has some money.  
Yes, he has a lot of money.

We study many hours every night.  
We study a lot of hours every night.  
We study a few hours every night.

There wasn't any news on the radio.  
 There wasn't much news on the radio.  
 There was little news on the radio.  
 There wasn't a lot of news on the radio.  
 There was some news on the radio.

Did you eat some apples yesterday?  
 Did you eat any apples yesterday?  
 Did you eat a lot of apples yesterday?  
 Did you eat a few apples yesterday?  
 Did you eat many apples yesterday?

Did they eat some fruit yesterday?  
 Did they eat much fruit yesterday?  
 Did they eat a lot of fruit yesterday?  
 Did they eat a little fruit yesterday?  
 Did they eat any fruit yesterday?

Are radios very expensive?  
 Yes, a few radios are very expensive.  
 Yes, many radios are very expensive.  
 Yes, a lot of radios are very expensive.  
 Yes, some radios are very expensive.

He doesn't have any time to help me.  
 He doesn't have much time to help me.  
 He doesn't have a lot of time to help me.  
 He has a little time to help me.  
 He has some time to help me.  
 End of Tape 1209B

(Note that we use many and a few with count nouns; a little and much with mass nouns and a lot of, any and some with both.)

Here are some sentences with both direct and indirect objects. Practice using them.

Mrs. Johnson often buy the children toys.  
 Mrs. Johnson often buys toys for the children.

We give our families gifts at Christmas.  
 We give gifts to our families at Christmas.

I'll get her a radio next week.  
 I'll get a radio for her next week.

John showed me his new watch.  
 John showed his new watch to me.

Will you please pass me the bread?  
 Will you please pass the bread to me?

Henry writes her a letter every night.  
 Henry writes a letter to her every night.



Frank told me an interesting story.  
 Frank told an interesting story to me.

Should I buy you this radio?  
 Should I buy this radio for you?

Can you show me a picture of your home?  
 Can you show a picture of your home to me?

We'll now read a few short sentences. Remember what they say. We will then ask you some questions about these sentences.

Robert wants to go downtown tomorrow. He wants to buy a few things. But the stores will be closed tomorrow. It is a holiday. Robert buys his things in the drugstore. It is not closed on a holiday.

Now listen to these questions. Answer them and then repeat the correct responses.

Example:       Where does Robert want to go?  
                   Robert wants to go downtown.  
                   Robert wants to go downtown.

When does Robert want to go downtown?

Robert wants to go downtown tomorrow.

Why does he want to go downtown?

He wants to buy a few things.

Will the stores be closed tomorrow?

Yes, the stores will be closed tomorrow.

Why will the stores be closed tomorrow?

It is a holiday.

Where does Robert buy his things?

Robert buys his things in a drugstore.

Isn't the drugstore closed on a holiday?

No, the drugstore isn't closed on a holiday.

## TAPE 1209C

Let's practice some questions and answers with mass and count nouns. Listen and then repeat the sentences.

Do many students study all day long?  
Yes, a lot of students study all day long.

How many students study all day long?  
Not many students study all day long.

Do many people speak English?  
Yes, a lot of people speak English.

How many people speak English?  
Not many people speak English.

Did many boys go to the movies?  
Yes, a lot of boys went to the movies.

How many boys went to the movies?  
Not many boys went to the movies.

Does much coffee come from Brazil?  
Yes, a lot of coffee comes from Brazil.

How much coffee comes from the U. S. ?  
Not much coffee comes from the U. S.

Is much news good to print?  
Yes, a lot of news is good to print.

How much news is interesting?  
Not much news is interesting.

Is there much news in today's paper?  
Yes, there's a lot of news in today's paper.

How much news is there in today's paper?  
There isn't much news in today's paper.

Are there many students in the lab?  
Yes, there are a lot of students in the lab.

How many students are there in the lab?  
There aren't many students in the lab.

Was there much hot coffee in the pot?  
Yes, there was a lot of hot coffee in the pot.

How much hot coffee was there in the pot?  
There wasn't much coffee in the pot.

Were there many girls at the dance?  
Yes, there were a lot of girls at the dance.

How many girls were there at the dance?  
There weren't many girls at the dance.

Is there much light in the room?  
Yes, there's a lot of light in the room.

How much light is there in the room?  
There's not much light in the room.

Did you bring much candy for the children?  
Yes, we brought a lot of candy for the children.

How much candy did you bring for the children?  
We didn't bring much candy for the children.

Did you send many letters to your friends?  
Yes, we sent a lot of letters to our friends.

How many letters did you send to your friends?  
We didn't send many letters to our friends.

Is Mother buying much food for the family?  
Yes, she's buying a lot of food for the family.

How much food is she buying for the family?  
She's not buying much food for the family.

Will the children see many things on the trip?  
Yes, the children will see a lot of things on the trip.

How many things will they see on the trip?  
They won't see many things on the trip.

Will they have much money to spend?  
Yes, they will have a lot of money to spend.

How much money might they have to spend?  
They might not have much money to spend.

Let's practice some questions and answers containing indirect and direct objects.

Did you get a TV for the children?  
Yes, we got the children a TV.

Are you giving Mary a book?  
Yes, we're giving a book to Mary.

Did she make you a pie?  
Yes, she made a pie for me.

Will she buy a car for herself?  
Yes, she'll buy herself a car.

Should we tell John the truth?  
Yes, let's tell the truth to John.

Will you pass me the salt?

Yes, I will pass the salt to you.

Have you sent a letter to your family?

Yes, I sent my family a letter.

Will you please give the money to me?

Give me the money please.

Would you like to buy me some coffee?

Yes, we would like to buy coffee for you.

Have you read a bedtime story to the children yet?

Yes, we've already read them a bedtime story.

Would you please tell us the news?

Yes, we will tell it to you.

Are the children taking father his lunch?

Yes, they're taking his lunch to him.

Can you get a book for me from the library?

Sure, we can get you a book.

Did you give Mother a present?

No, we didn't give anything to her.

Why didn't you give something to her?

We're giving her a big present later.

Did you bring something for the children?

Yes, we brought them lots of toys and candy.

What is Father giving to everybody?

He's giving the men cigars.

And he's giving the women candy.

Please give the dog and cat something to eat.

We have already given them their food.

Notice the count-mass noun modifiers we use in these questions and statements.

Listen and repeat everything.

Is there some money in the box?

Yes, there's a little money in the box.

There isn't any money in the box.

How much money is there on the table?

Are there any books in the room?

There are a few books on the table.

There are also some books on the chair.

There aren't any books on the bed.

How many books are there in the house?

A few people will come to visit tonight.  
Some boys and girls will dance.  
A lot of us will have a good time.  
How many people will come for supper?

Would you like to send your family some presents?  
 Yes, we would like to send a few things to them.  
 But we don't have any money yet.

What are you going to drink?  
 Oh, let's drink a little coffee.  
 There isn't any cream.  
 Is there some sugar?  
 There's a lot of sugar.  
 But there's not much coffee.  
 Then let's drink something else.

Let's practice combining short sentences into a long sentence with proper connecting words. Listen and repeat everything.

I would like to leave early.  
 John would like to leave early.  
 I would like to leave early, and John would too.

Mary needs a new book.  
 Robert needs a new book.  
 Mary needs a new book, and Robert does too.

The children like to watch TV.  
 Father and mother like to watch TV.  
 The children like to watch TV, and father and mother do too.

Alice went home early.  
 Jane went home early.  
 Alice went home early, and Jane did too.

I don't want to go today.  
 John doesn't want to go today.  
 I don't want to go today, and John doesn't either.

Mary doesn't need a book.  
 Robert doesn't need a book.  
 Mary doesn't need a book and Robert doesn't either.

The children don't like to read.  
 Father doesn't like to read.  
 The children don't like to read, and father doesn't either.

Alice didn't go home early.  
 Jane didn't go home early.  
 Alice didn't go home early, and Jane didn't either.

He didn't write the homework,  
 She didn't write the homework.  
 He didn't write the homework. and she didn't either.

I won't tell anybody anything.  
 You won't tell anybody anything.  
 I won't tell anybody anything, and you won't either.

Notice the relationship of the following short sentences and how we combine them.  
 Listen and repeat.

Mary is a teacher.  
 John isn't a teacher.  
 Mary is a teacher, but John isn't.

The students are learning English.  
 The teacher isn't learning English.  
 The students are learning English, but the teacher isn't.

John drives a car.  
 Mary doesn't drive a car.  
 John drives a car, but Mary doesn't.

Carl went home by train.  
 Dorothy didn't go home by train.  
 Carl went home by train, but Dorothy didn't.

She'll study the lesson well.  
 He won't study the lesson well.  
 She'll study the lesson well, but he won't.

Notice the relationship of short sentences and the words we use to combine them.  
 Listen and repeat.

Mary doesn't cut the grass.  
 Robert cuts the grass.  
 Mary doesn't cut the grass, but Robert does.

I can't speak French.  
 Paul can speak French.  
 I can't speak French, but Paul can.

James hasn't met the children yet.  
 Louise has met the children.  
 James hasn't met the children yet, but Louise has.

We didn't write mother a letter.  
 John wrote mother a letter.  
 We didn't write mother a letter, but John did.

I'm not a doctor.  
 You're a doctor.  
 I'm not a doctor, but you are.

## SOUND AND INTONATION

Listen. Remember that stress conveys meaning. Listen and repeat.

- A: Hello, is Joe there?  
B: He's not here. He's not downstairs. He's upstairs.
- A: Do I get off at this stop?  
B: No, not at this stop. The next stop.
- A: Won't they be here at two o'clock?  
B: No, at three o'clock.
- A: I may call Joe tomorrow.  
B: He won't be here.  
A: I might call him tonight.
- A: Do you usually go to work by bus?  
B: No, I usually go by car.
- A: Do you want a sport shirt or a dress shirt?  
B: Just a plain white shirt.
- A: Does John make more mistakes than Mary?  
B: No, Mary makes more mistakes than John.
- A: How long do you think it will take?  
B: Not very long by plane, but a long time by ship.
- A: I ought to go to bed and rest.  
But I have to work.
- A: I couldn't go yesterday.  
But I can go today.
- A: Do Mr. and Mrs. Andrews like adventure stories?  
B: No they like comedy shows.
- A: Did you get the stamps?  
B: No, I forgot all about them.
- A: What would you like to drink now?  
B: I'll have coffee later.

Listen. Remember there are many initial and medial clusters. Listen and repeat.

<u>s</u> teak	<u>s</u> peak	hos <u>p</u> ital	<u>s</u> moke	<u>p</u> lease
<u>s</u> tudent	<u>s</u> pend	ex <u>p</u> ensive	<u>S</u> mith	<u>p</u> lan
<u>s</u> ister	<u>s</u> pell		<u>s</u> mile	
			<u>s</u> mall	

<u>c</u> lose	<u>b</u> lack	<u>g</u> lad
<u>c</u> lass	<u>b</u> rown	<u>g</u> lass
<u>c</u> lean	<u>b</u> lue	<u>g</u> reen
<u>c</u> ross		

flower

fruit



## OUTLINE AND STUDY OBJECTIVES

Structures

Indirect Object

Count Nouns and Mass Nouns

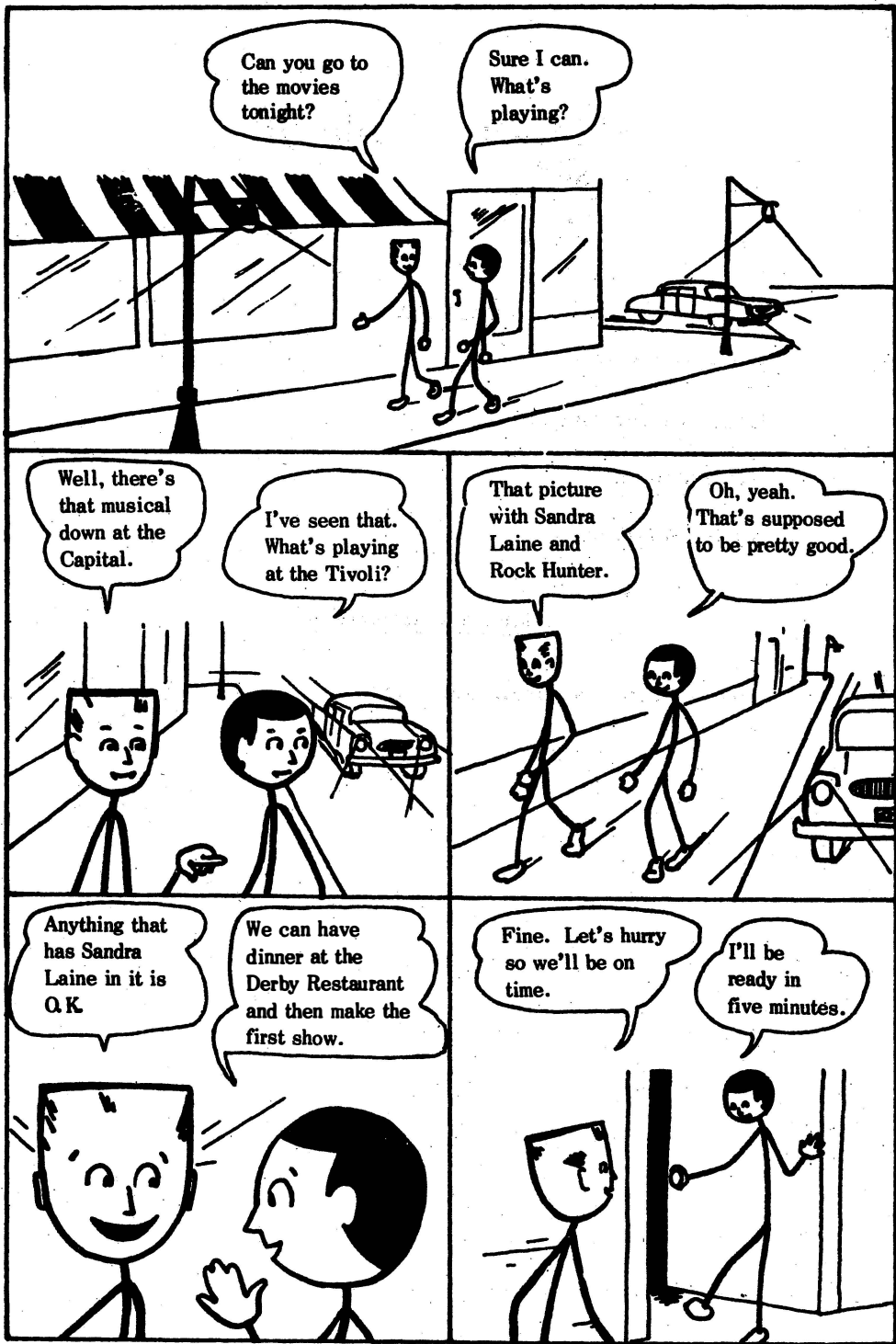
Verb Tenses

Modal Auxiliaries

Sound and Intonation

Stress patterns within sentences

Going to the Movies



## UNIT 1210

## CONVERSATION AND READING PRACTICES

## Dialog

- A: Can you go to the movies tonight?  
 B: Sure I can. What's playing?
- A: Well, there's a musical down at the Capital.  
 B: I've seen that. What's playing at the Tivoli?
- A: That picture with Sandra Laine and Rock Hunter.  
 B: Oh, yeah. That's supposed to be pretty good.
- A: Anything that has Sanda Laine in it is O. K.  
 B: We can have dinner at the Derby Restaurant and then make the first show.
- A: Fine. Let's hurry so we'll be on time.  
 B: I'll be ready in five minutes.

## Reading

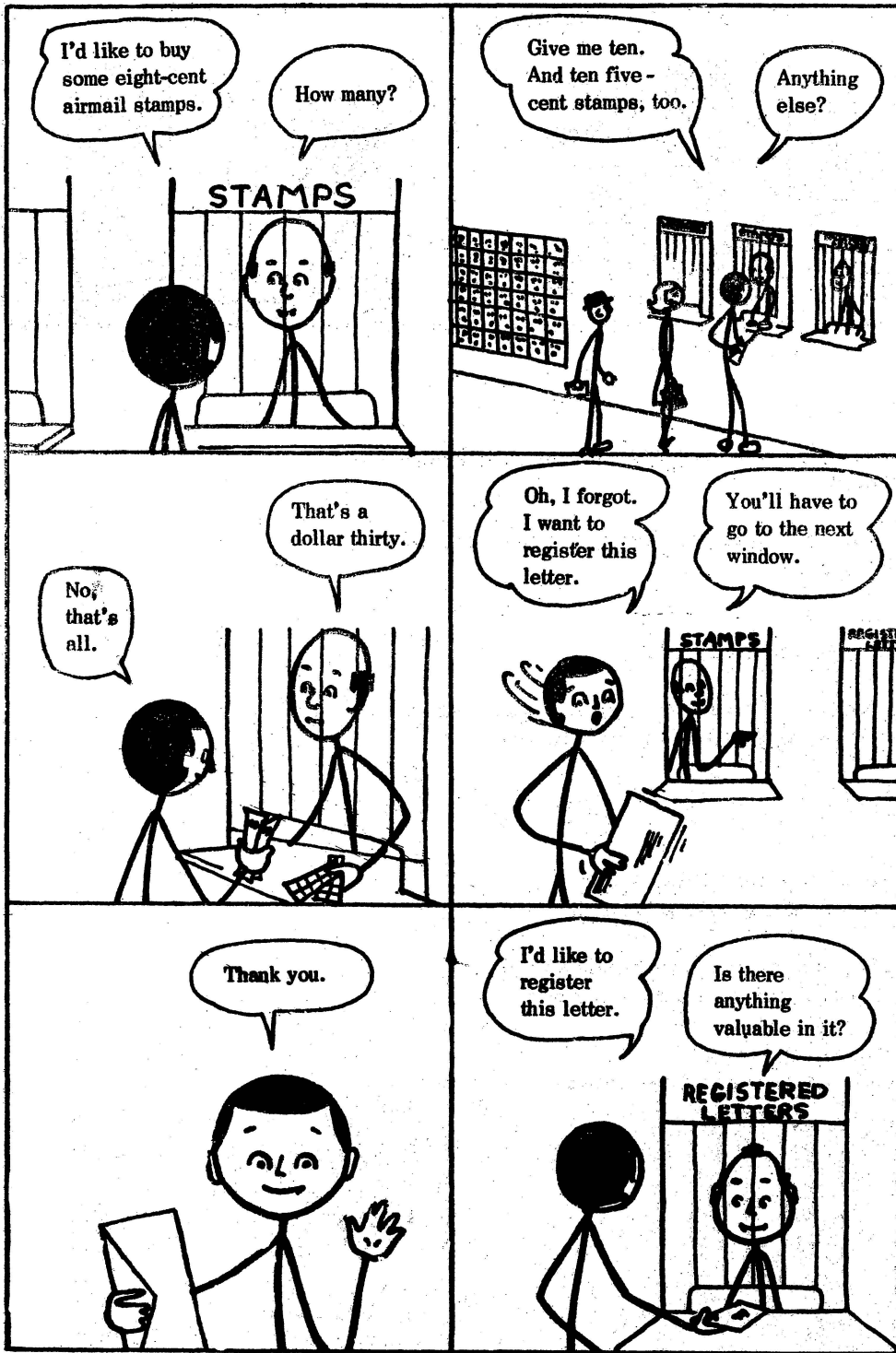
It is early in the evening. John is studying now, but he may go to the movies later. There is a good movie at the Center Theater. John thinks he can finish his homework very soon. He began his lesson after dinner. He must finish before eight o'clock or he will not have time to see the movie. He has a lot of homework, so he is hurrying. He shouldn't hurry, because he may make many mistakes. But he doesn't want to be late for the picture. He may not have a chance to see another movie for a long time.

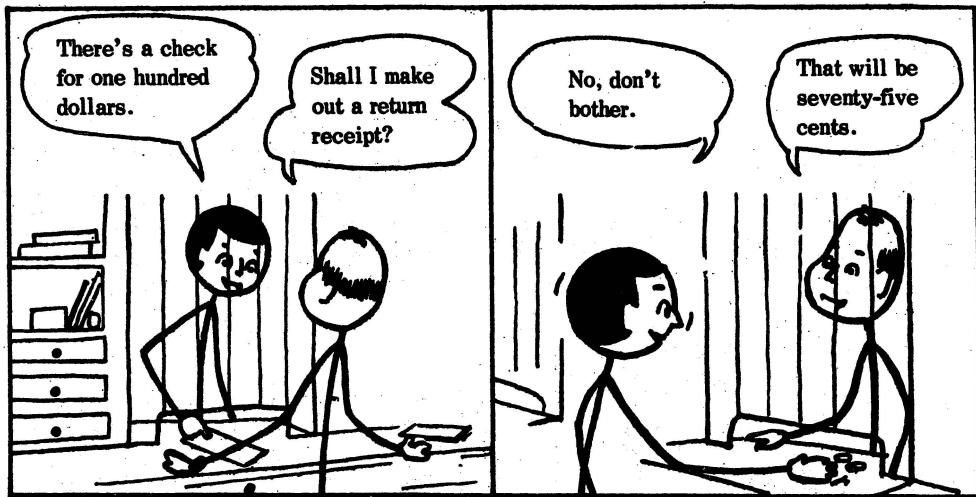
## Word Drill

1. movie  
 movies  
 the movies  
 to the movies  
 Do you often go to the movies?
2. picture  
 a good picture  
 There is a good picture at the Plaza Theater.
3. dinner  
 before dinner  
 after dinner  
 Does she usually study before dinner or after dinner?
4. mistakes  
 many mistakes  
 lessons  
 my lessons  
 in my lessons  
 I don't like to make mistakes in my lessons.

5. begin  
begin early  
finish  
finish early  
If you begin early you can finish early.
  
6. chance  
a chance  
a good chance  
We have a good chance to see a movie tonight.
  
7. think  
think about  
thinking about  
I am thinking about my lessons.
  
8. think  
I think  
finish  
I can finish  
I can finish soon  
I think I can finish soon.

At the Post Office





### Dialog

**A:** I'd like to buy some eight-cent airmail stamps.

**B:** How many?

**A:** Give me ten. And ten five-cent stamps, too.

**B:** Anything else?

**A:** No, that's all.

**B:** That's a dollar thirty.

**A:** Oh, I forgot. I want to register this letter.

**B:** You'll have to go to the next window.

**A:** Thank you.

**A:** I'd like to register this letter.

**B:** Is there anything valuable in it?

**A:** There's a check for one hundred dollars.

**B:** Shall I make out a return receipt?

**A:** No, don't bother.

**B:** That will be seventy-five cents.

## Reading:

Joe wanted to go to the post office yesterday. But he did not want to go alone. He asked me to go with him. He was afraid that the people in the post office might not understand his English. He would not go without me. I could not go in the morning, so we went in the afternoon.

First, Joe bought some stamps. He needed five-cent stamps and eight-cent stamps. He also wanted to mail a package to his family. The package was small. Joe forgot to write his return address on the package. The clerk in the post office told him to put the address on it. Joe could not understand the clerk, so I helped him. Then Joe asked for a money order. He wanted to send some money to his family. The clerk could not understand Joe. I told the clerk what he wanted. The clerk wrote the money order for him. I am glad I went with Joe. He needed my help.

## Word Drill

1. stamps  
some stamps  
some five-cent stamps  
I need some five-cent stamps.
2. family  
to your family  
write  
need to write  
You need to write a letter to your family.
3. understand  
didn't understand  
didn't understand him  
She didn't understand him.
4. forget  
forgot  
forgot to buy  
forgot to buy some stamps  
They forgot to buy some stamps.
5. ask  
asks  
the family asks him  
The family asks him to send a letter.
6. with me  
to go with me  
wanted to go with me  
He wanted to go with me.
7. without me  
to go without me  
afraid to go without me  
He was afraid to go without me.

8. alone  
 wanted to go alone  
 didn't want to go alone  
 He didn't want to go alone.
9. small  
 small package  
 small package to his family  
 He is sending a small package to his family.
10. glad  
 glad to send  
 glad to send a letter  
 I am glad to send a letter to you.

Answer these questions about the reading.

1. Where did Joe want to go yesterday?
2. Why didn't he want to go alone?
3. What did Joe buy first?
4. What did he want to mail to his family?
5. What did he forget to write on the package?
6. How did he want to send money to his family?

Answer these questions about the dialog.

1. What kind of stamps does he want to buy?
2. How many eight-cent stamps does he buy?
3. How many five-cent stamps does he buy?
4. Where does he go in order to register the letter?
5. What is in the registered letter?
6. How much does the registered letter cost?

Change the following to question forms.

1. He asked me to go with him.
2. He needed some stamps.
3. The package was small.
4. The clerk told him to put the address on it.
5. The clerk wrote the money order for him.
6. I am glad I went with Joe.
7. He needed my help.



## EXPLANATION AND DRILL OF STRUCTURES

## 1. The Indirect Object

Remember that some verbs may have two objects: A direct object and an indirect object. The indirect object is the person to whom or for whom we do something (the direct object). (Review page 261).

Study the following sentences. Note that we also express the indirect object with a to or for phrase.

1. I want to buy you a cup of coffee.  
I want to buy a cup of coffee for you.  
I want to buy it for you.
2. Will you hand me a pencil?  
Will you hand a pencil to me?  
Will you hand it to me?
3. He offered me a bargain.  
He offered a bargain to me.  
He offered it to me.
4. Did you fix the car for me?  
Did you fix it for me?
5. We'll get you some fruit tomorrow.  
We'll get some fruit for you tomorrow.  
We'll get it for you tomorrow.
6. He made his friend a pair of shoes.  
He made a pair of shoes for his friend.  
He made it for his friend.
7. The student wrote his father a letter.  
The student wrote a letter to his father.  
The student wrote it to him.
8. Will you tell the teacher your name?  
Will you tell your name to the teacher?  
Will you tell it to the teacher?
9. The clerk showed him a brown suit.  
The clerk showed a brown suit to him.  
The clerk showed it to him.
10. He sold his roommate his car.  
He sold his car to his roommate.  
He sold it to his roommate.
11. Bring me a new book tomorrow!  
Bring a new book to me tomorrow!  
Bring it to me tomorrow!
12. We'll get Tom a roll of film.  
We'll get a roll of film for Tom.  
We'll get it for Tom.

## 2. Count Nouns and Mass Nouns

We have learned that count nouns stand for things we can count and mass nouns stand for things we can't count.

Study the following sentences. Notice the adjectives used with the nouns.

1. Where can I get some medicine?  
Can I get any medicine at the drugstore?  
We buy a lot of medicine every month.  
We use little medicine at our house.
2. There are a lot of students in this school.  
Are there many students in this school?  
I have a few students in my class.  
Some students are studying English.
3. A few friends are going to the movies.  
Do you have many friends here?  
We have a lot of friends with us.  
He doesn't have any friends in this city.
4. Do you drink much coffee?  
I drink little coffee.  
He never drinks any coffee.  
Americans drink a lot of coffee.
5. Most people have some money.  
He has a lot of money.  
Bob doesn't have any money today.  
How much money do you get?
6. We use a lot of paper in our work.  
Do you need some paper in your work?  
I use a little paper every day.  
I don't have any paper with me.
7. They never read any books.  
Do you read many books?  
Yes, I read a few books every month.  
He read a lot of books last year.
8. We don't have much time before class.  
Do we have any time before class?  
He has a little time before class.  
The students have a lot of time before class.
9. I didn't see any people in town last night.  
Do many people live in these houses?  
A lot of people go to the stores on Saturday.  
We saw a few people at the club last night.
10. How many pages does this newspaper have?  
This newspaper has a lot of pages on Sunday.  
Our newspaper has a few pages on Monday.  
Most newspapers have many pages.

## Verb Tenses

We have now learned four tenses of the verb. Study the following sentences and notice the verb changes in the different tenses.

1. I go to the movies in the evening.  
I went to the movies last night.  
I have gone to the movies many times.  
I'll go to the movies tomorrow.
2. What is playing at the movies?  
What was playing at the movies last night?  
What has been playing at the movies?  
What will be playing at the movies on Saturday?
3. We see many pictures during the week.  
We saw many pictures last month.  
We have seen many pictures in this theater.  
We'll see many pictures together next year.
4. Does he have his book in class?  
Did he have his book in class?  
Has he ever had his book in class?  
Will he ever have his book in class?
5. He always comes to class early.  
He always came to class early.  
He has always come to class early.  
He will always come to class early.
6. John studies his lesson after dinner.  
John studied his lesson after dinner.  
John has always studied his lesson after dinner.  
John will study his lesson after dinner.
7. He often begins to write letters home.  
He often began to write letters home.  
He has often begun to write letters home.  
He will often begin to write letters home.
8. They do their work well.  
They did their work well.  
They've done their work well.  
They'll do their work well.
9. This book is interesting reading.  
This book was interesting reading.  
This book has been interesting reading.  
This book will be interesting reading.
10. We leave the school every night.  
We left the school last night.  
We've often left the language school.  
We'll leave the language school next year.

**Exercise.** Change these sentences to the other three tenses.

1. Fred makes many mistakes.
2. I wanted to see the park.
3. Will you finish the lesson on time?
4. He has always liked to go to the movies.
5. We learn English quickly.
6. They have read many books.
7. Did John buy the brown suit?
8. He has told me his story.
9. They are sending money to their families.
10. He often forgets to write the address on his letters.

#### 4. Modal Auxiliaries

Some of the most important verbs in English are the modal auxiliaries. We have drilled on them extensively in this book (Units 4, 6, 7, and 8). Here are some more exercises to see how well we have learned to use these modals.

##### a. Short answers with modals

1. Would Joe go to the post office without me?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Could I go in the morning?  
No, you \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Could I go in the afternoon?  
Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Could Joe understand the clerk?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Could the clerk understand Joe?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.

##### b. Read these sentences with modals. Be sure you understand them.

1. Can you go to the movies tonight? (ability)
2. We can have dinner at the Derby Restaurant. (ability)
3. He may go to the movies later. (possible future action)
4. He must finish before eight o'clock. (obligation or necessity)

5. He shouldn't hurry. (obligation not to do something)
6. He may make many mistakes. (possible future action)
7. He may not have a chance to see another movie. (uncertainty of possible future action)
8. May he go to a dance later? (permission)
9. Can he finish his homework very soon? (ability)
10. Must he finish before nine o'clock? (obligation or necessity)
11. You'll have to go to the next window. (obligation or necessity)
12. Shall I make a return receipt? (polite request)
13. Shall I open the window for you? (polite offer)
14. Shall I tell you the answer? (polite offer)
15. When shall we meet you? (polite inquiry)
16. Where shall we go? (polite inquiry)
17. Shall I mail it for you? (polite offer)
18. He was afraid that the people might not understand his English. (uncertainty of possible future action)
19. He would not go without me. (negative feeling)
20. I could not go in the morning. (inability - past time)
21. Joe could not understand the clerk. (inability - past time)
22. He is afraid that the people may not understand his English. (uncertainty of possible future action)
23. He will not go without me. (negative feeling)
24. Joe could not understand the clerk yesterday. (inability - past time)
25. Joe can not understand the clerk now. (inability)

c. Use any modal possible in each sentence.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ record some new tapes in the laboratory.
2. The children \_\_\_\_\_ not play in the rain.
3. The barber \_\_\_\_\_ not cut my hair too short.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you call them on the telephone?
5. It \_\_\_\_\_ be very cold next week.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ take a long trip during our vacation.
7. The house \_\_\_\_\_ not be ready until next year.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ many people come to see the movie?
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the dentist next week.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ like to have some sugar in my coffee.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ there be any mail on the holiday?

d. Give the contracted forms (can't, etc.).

1. I cannot understand this lesson.
2. They should not listen to the radio late at night.
3. We could not find the books on the desk.
4. Mr. Taylor will not drive to New York.
5. You must not talk so loud.
6. They cannot give us any information.
7. The doctors will not have a holiday tomorrow.
8. Peter would not answer the telephone last night.

## TAPE 1210A

Listen to the following conversations.

A: I talked to John a little while ago.

B: What is he doing?  
I thought he would be playing football now.  
It is still early in the morning.

A: He is studying now.  
He may go to the movies later.

B: Are there any good movies here now?

A: Yes, there are a few good pictures in town.

B: Can John finish his homework in time?

A: He thinks he can finish soon.  
He must finish before eight o'clock,  
if he wants to see a movie.

B: When did he start studying?

A: He started as soon as he arrived home.  
He has a lot of homework and must hurry.  
He hasn't eaten dinner yet.

B: He shouldn't hurry.  
He might make too many mistakes.

A: But he doesn't want to be late.  
He can go to the movies tonight.  
He may not have another chance soon.

(John finishes his homework. He calls a friend about going to the movies).

A: Can you go to the movies tonight?

B: Sure I can. What's playing?

A: Well, there's a musical at the Capital.

B: I've seen that.  
What's playing at the Tivoli?

A: That picture with Sandra Laine and Rock Hunter.

B: That's supposed to be pretty good.

- A: Anything with Sandra Laine is O. K.
- B: We can have dinner at the Derby Restaurant.  
Then we can make the first show.
- A: Let's hurry so we'll be on time.
- B: I'll be ready in five minutes.

Now listen to the conversations again and repeat them.

Let's practice putting some words and phrases together to form complete sentences.  
Repeat what you hear.

movie  
movies  
the movies  
to the movies  
Do you often go to the movies?

picture  
a good picture  
There is a good picture at the Capital.

dinner  
before dinner  
after dinner  
Does she usually study before dinner or after dinner?

make  
make the first show  
We can make the first show.

mistakes  
many mistakes  
too many mistakes  
He might make too many mistakes.

late  
to be late  
He doesn't want to be late.

chance  
a good chance  
have a good chance  
We have a good chance to see a movie tonight.

think  
think about  
thinking about  
I am thinking about my lessons.



begin  
 begin early  
 finish  
 finish early  
 If you begin early you can finish early.

as soon as  
 as soon as he arrived  
 He started as soon as he arrived home.

think  
 he thinks  
 finish  
 he can finish  
 he can finish soon  
 He thinks he can finish soon.

dinner  
 have dinner  
 we can have dinner  
 We can have dinner at the Derby Restaurant.

hurry  
 hurrying  
 is hurrying  
 He is hurrying to finish his homework.

pretty  
 pretty good  
 the picture is pretty good  
 The picture at the Capital is pretty good.

musical  
 a musical  
 a musical is a play  
 A musical is a play with a lot of music.

ready  
 be ready  
 I'll be ready  
 I'll be ready in five minutes.

Here are some statements based on the conversations you have heard. We'll ask some questions about these statements. You should answer the questions and then repeat the correct responses.

Example:     John is studying early in the evening.  
                   When is John studying?  
                   John is studying early in the evening.

John is studying early so he can go to the movies later.  
 Where does John want to go later?

He wants to go to the movies.

A musical is showing at the Capital.  
What kind of picture is showing at the Capital?

A musical is showing at the Capital.

The movie starts at eight o'clock.  
When does the movie start?

The movie starts at eight o'clock.

John started studying as soon as he arrived home.  
When did he start studying?

He started studying as soon as he arrived home.

He finished his homework before dinner.  
What did he do before dinner?

He finished his homework before dinner.

We make many mistakes when we hurry.  
What do we make when we hurry?

We make many mistakes when we hurry.

We are going to the movies tonight.  
Where are we going tonight?

We are going to the movies tonight.

They eat dinner at the Derby Restaurant.  
Where do they eat dinner?

They eat dinner at the Derby Restaurant.

We are going to the movie at the Tivoli.  
Where are we going?

We are going to the movie at the Tivoli.

He'll be ready by 7:30.  
When will he be ready?

He'll be ready by 7:30.

Here are some sentences with the progressive verb forms. Notice the verb forms in the different tenses. Repeat the sentences.

What is John doing?  
What was John doing last night?  
What will John be doing tomorrow?

I'm just finishing my homework.  
I was just finishing my homework.  
I'll just be finishing my homework at 8:00.

We are going to the movies tonight.  
We were just going to the movies when you came.  
We'll be going to the movies once a week.

They are eating dinner now.  
They were eating dinner when I called.  
They'll be eating dinner at this time tomorrow.

A good picture is playing at the Roxie.  
 A good picture was playing at the Roxie yesterday.  
 A good picture will be playing at the Roxie next week.

I'm hurrying to finish my work.  
 I was hurrying to finish my work.  
 I'll be hurrying to finish my work.

We're getting ready as fast as we can.  
 We were getting ready as fast as we could.  
 We'll be getting ready as fast as we can.

In our study of English we have learned many special expressions. Here are some of these expressions used in sentences. Notice the use of these expressions. Repeat the sentences as you hear them.

1. for this reason  
 I need to know English.  
 For this reason, I'm studying it.  
 For what reason are you leaving?  
 He wants to drive a car.  
 For that reason he's taking driving lessons.
2. just a  
 We have just a little while to study.  
 He uses just a little sugar in his coffee.  
 I write just a few letters every week.
3. to the left (to the right)  
 Do you go to the left around the corner?  
 My office is to the right.  
 To the left is a new school house.
4. get on - get off  
 We get on the bus at Tenth Avenue.  
 We get off the bus at Main Street.  
 They get on the boat in New York.  
 Does he get on the train in Chicago?  
 Does he get off the train in New Orleans?
5. by bus    by train    by taxi  
    by car    by boat    by cab  
    by plane

We always go to work by bus.  
 When I go to New York I go by train.  
 Do you ever travel by car?  
 It is often faster to go by taxi.  
 It is expensive to go by cab.  
 They went across the ocean by plane.  
 I enjoy traveling by boat.

6. make up my mind  
I made up my mind about the book.  
Can't you make up your mind about it?  
They made up their minds to study hard.
7. change my mind  
She always changes her mind at the last minute.  
I never change my mind.  
Do you often change your mind?
8. pick up  
He picked up his friend at 7:00.  
Shall I pick you up later?  
Please pick up your books.  
They'll pick up the package at the store.
9. turn on - turn off  
Please turn the light on.  
We turn the lights off at 11:00.  
Will you turn the radio on?  
I want to turn the radio off.  
We turn the motor on to start the car.  
We turn the motor off to stop the car.
10. look forward to  
Do you look forward to the weekend?  
We look forward to the holidays.  
They looked forward to their trip.

## TAPE 1210B

Listen to these conversations about the post office.

I couldn't find you yesterday afternoon.  
Where were you?

I went to the post office with Joe.  
He didn't want to go alone.  
He asked me to go with him.  
His English isn't very good.  
They can't understand him at the post office.  
We went in the afternoon.  
I couldn't go in the morning.

You were gone a long time.  
Did he have a lot to do at the post office?

He bought some five-cent and eight-cent stamps.  
Then he wanted to mail a package to his family.  
He forgot to write his return address on it.  
He had to do that.  
Next he bought a money order.  
He wanted to send some money to his family.  
The clerk couldn't understand him.  
He needed my help.  
I was glad I went with him.

(One day Bob went to the post office to buy some stamps. He was waiting in line and heard the following conversation.)

I'd like to buy some eight-cent stamps.  
How many?

Give me ten. And ten five-cent stamps too.  
Anything else?

No, that's all.  
That's a dollar thirty.

Oh, I forgot.  
I want to register this letter.  
You'll have to go to the next window.  
Thank you.

I'd like to register this letter.  
Is there anything valuable in it?

There's a check for one hundred dollars.  
Shall I make out a return receipt?  
No, don't bother.  
That will be seventy-five cents.

Listen to the conversations again and repeat them.

Let's practice putting some words and phrases together to form complete sentences.  
Repeat what you hear.

**post office**

go to the post office

wanted to go to the post office

I wanted to go to the post office yesterday.

**understand**

understand his English

might not understand his English

They might not understand his English.

**stamps**

some stamps

some five-cent stamps

I need some five-cent stamps.

**family**

to his family

package

mail a package

He'll mail a package to his family.

**address**

my return address

write my return address

I didn't write my return address on it.

**forget**

forgot

forgot to mail

forgot to mail the letter

We forgot to mail the letter.

**register**

register this letter

want to register this letter

John wants to register this letter home.

**receipt**

return receipt

make out a return receipt

Shall I make out a return receipt?

**ask**

asked

asked me

asked me to go

He asked me to go with him.

money order  
 buy a money order  
 buy a money order for one hundred dollars  
 We'll buy a money order for one hundred dollars.

We'll now change some statements to questions. You will hear the statement. Change this statement to a question and then repeat the correct response.

Example      He asked me to go with him.  
                  Did he ask me to go with him?  
                  Did he ask me to go with him?

He needed some stamps.

Did he need some stamps?

Dick went to the post office with Joe.

Did Dick go to the post office with Joe?

He asked Dick to go with him.

Did he ask Dick to go with him?

His English isn't very good.

Isn't his English very good?

He bought some airmail stamps.

Did he buy some airmail stamps?

He sent some money to his family.

Did he send some money to his family?

He wrote the return address on the package.

Did he write the return address on the package?

The clerk wrote the money order for him.

Did the clerk write the money order for him?

Many stores close on holidays.

Do many stores close on holidays?

He likes to eat in a restaurant downtown.

Does he like to eat in a restaurant downtown?

Here are some questions and answers. Notice the use of the frequency words.  
Listen and repeat.

Does Helen often go to the movies?  
Yes, she usually goes twice a week.  
No, she doesn't often go.

Does Bobby watch TV every night?  
Yes, he usually watches it every night.  
No, he only watches it Sunday night.

Do we often speak English outside of class?  
Yes, we sometimes speak it to our friends.  
No, we seldom speak English outside of class.

Does Larry write Marjorie every week?  
Yes, he usually writes her every week.  
No, he doesn't always write her every week.

Do you sometimes wash your own clothes?  
Yes, we sometimes wash our own clothes.  
No, we don't often wash our own clothes.

Do we often get up before six o'clock?  
Yes, we often get up at five-thirty.  
We don't ever get up after six o'clock.

Here we have some sentences with modal auxiliaries. Repeat everything.

Can the students speak English well?  
Yes, they can speak it pretty well.

Should they go downtown every night?  
No, they shouldn't go every night.

Shall we repeat the tape?  
Should we repeat the tape?  
No, we won't have enough time.

May I change my seat?  
Yes, you may change your seat.

Did Mary tell you it may rain tonight?  
Yes, she said it might rain tonight.

The teacher says we can speak English well.  
The teacher said, we couldn't leave early.

Mary thinks Robert will call her up.  
She told me he would call before eight o'clock.



Now let's practice reading the following expressions. Listen to them and then repeat them.

Let's go downtown tomorrow.

Let us go

Let us go

Let's go

Let's go

Let's go downtown

Let's go to class.

Let's go to the lab.

Let's go to the restaurant.

Let's go to the drugstore.

I need to get a few things.

I need to get

You need to get

We need to get

They need to get

He needs to get

She needs to get

I need to get a few things.

You need to get a lot of stamps.

We need to get a pack of cigarettes.

They need to get a few tapes.

He needs to get a few pencils.

She needs to get paper and pencils.

You mean all the stores are closed?

You mean . . .

I mean . . .

We mean . . .

They mean . . .

He means . . .

She means . . .

You mean = (Do you mean . . .?)

You mean all the stores are closed?

You mean all the banks are closed?

You mean all the offices are closed?

You mean all the students are studying?

You mean I can get stamps at the drugstore?

You mean Mr. Jones speaks Chinese?

I think they have a stamp machine there.

I think . . .

You think . . .

We think . . .

They think . . .

He thinks . . .

She thinks . . .

Do you think they have a stamp machine?

Does he think they have a stamp machine?

I think they have a stamp machine there.

We think they have a stamp machine there.

He thinks they have a stamp machine there.  
I think the stores are closed tomorrow.  
We think the banks are closed tomorrow.  
They think they speak English perfectly.  
He thinks he speaks Chinese perfectly.  
I think that's right.

Listen carefully to the following sentences. You will answer questions about them later.

I went to the post office with Joe yesterday. His English isn't very good. The clerks can't understand him. Joe bought some stamps. He sent a money order and a package to his family.

Here are some questions on the reading. Answer the questions and then repeat the correct answer.

Who went to the post office with you?

Joe went to the post office with me.

When did we go to the post office?

We went to the post office yesterday.

Does Joe speak good English?

No, his English isn't very good.

Can the clerks understand Joe?

No, the clerks cannot understand him.

Did Joe buy some stamps?

Yes, he bought some stamps.

Did he send a money order to his family?

Yes, he sent a money order to his family.

What did he do with the package?

He sent the package to his family.

What did his family get from Joe?

His family got a money order and a package from him.

## TAPE I210C

Let's practice some questions and answers using irregular verbs. Repeat what you hear.

Who did you write the letter to?  
I wrote it to my family.  
Didn't you write to your girl friend?  
No, I sent her flowers and candy.

Who is Joe bringing the present to?  
He's bringing it to the children.  
Did you bring them anything?  
Yes, I brought them toys and candy.

Who did Mrs. Jones teach English to?  
She taught English to some students.  
Did she teach them very well?  
Yes, she taught them good English.

Who understood the teacher?  
The students understood the teacher.  
Who did they understand well?  
They understood the teacher well.

When did he begin this Unit?  
We began it last week.  
Didn't we begin it this week?  
No, we began it two weeks ago.

What did you mean by "delicious"?  
We meant we liked it very much.  
Didn't you mean you didn't like it?  
No, we meant we did like it.

Have you thought about going to a concert?  
No, we haven't thought about it yet.

When did the bell ring?  
It rang a minute ago.

How much did the job pay you?  
It paid me forty dollars a week.  
Did they take out much tax?  
Yes, they took out five dollars a week.

What did the man tell you?  
He told me to hurry back.  
Didn't he say anything else?  
No, he just said, "Thank you, hurry back".

What did you think about the concert?  
I thought it was very nice.  
Did Lucy have a good time?  
Yes, she had a very good time at the concert.

Did James catch an early bus today?

Yes, he caught one at seven.

Who took the five o'clock bus?

Mary went at five.

She had to be at work by seven.

Let's practice some sentences with direct and indirect objects. Repeat everything you hear.

Please pass me the sugar and cream.

Give the book to me please.

Who did you give the flowers to?

We gave them to our teacher.

Could you let me have five dollars?

Yes, I'll lend you five for a week.

Would you please take these papers to the teacher?

Certainly. I'll take them to him.

Would you like me to buy you a drink?

Thank you. You might get me some soda water.

Are you sending post cards to all your friends?

No, I'm sending cards to my special friends only.

What have you bought for father? I

have bought him a new shirt.

Are you taking Mary anything this trip?

Yes, we're taking a small radio to her.

Did the clerk write the money order for him?

Yes, the clerk wrote him a money order.

Will you get Tom a roll of film?

Of course, we'll get him a roll.

Who did you get the camera for?

We got it for Mary.

What did you get John?

We got him a new shirt.

We got it for him.

We will now practice the interrogatives: how much and how many. Repeat everything you hear.

How many students are studying English?  
Seven students are studying English.

How much rain came down today?  
Two inches of rain fell this morning.

How many students have studied the lesson?  
All the students have studied the lesson.

How much sugar will make the coffee sweet?  
Two lumps of sugar will make it sweet.

How many people might be sick today?  
Ten students might be sick.

How many letters is she mailing?  
She is mailing five letters.

How much candy did he buy?  
He bought two boxes.

How many pictures have we seen?  
We've seen three pictures.

How much gas will you need?  
I'll need ten gallons.

How many lessons can you review?  
We can review five lessons.

Now let's review how many. Repeat everything.

How often does James go to class?  
He goes to class every day.

How often did you eat fish?  
We ate fish once a week.

How often will they go downtown?  
They'll go downtown every Saturday.

How often has Mary prepared the food?  
She has always prepared it every day.

How often could you go to a dance?  
We could go to a dance daily.

Let's practice some questions using question words and their answers. Repeat everything.

Where has Robert been this morning?

He has been in class all morning.

Who has already listened to these tapes?

The students have already listened to them.

What has the teacher done today?

He has worked with the students in English.

Who have we just listened to on the tape?

We just listened to Mr. Smith.

How many times has Henry gone to the zoo?

He has gone four times.

How many miles have you driven your car?

I have driven it about 30,000 miles.

How much has it cost you in repairs?

It has cost me about \$100.00.

How long have you owned your car?

We have owned it about three years.

How often have you changed the oil?

I have changed it every three months.

Why hasn't Robert bought a new car?

His old car has given him very good service.

The following questions and answers are about things happening right now.

Repeat them all.

Are the students talking their own language?

No, they are talking English in class.

Who is listening to them?

The teacher is listening to them.

Is the teacher speaking very much?

No, he's asking the questions.

Who is the teacher listening to?

The teacher is listening to the students.

What are the students talking about?

They're talking about their girl friends.

What is Robert reading today?  
He's reading a new book from the library.

How many people are drinking coffee?  
About fifty people are drinking coffee.

What are the others eating?  
They're eating ice cream.  
Some are only drinking coffee.

What are you thinking about?  
I'm thinking about English verbs.

These questions and answers are about things that have not happened yet.

When will we see you again?  
I'll see you again tonight.

Where will you be tonight?  
We'll see each other in the library.

Who'll go downtown with me?  
Joe will want to eat downtown.

Will he have any money to spend?  
Yes, but he'll only spend money for food.

What will you do downtown?  
Oh, I'll look at things in the stores.

How will we speak English some day?  
You will speak English very well some day.

Will that day be soon?  
Yes, it will be very soon.

Will we speak it as well as the teacher?  
No, but you'll speak it as well as you need to.

Will you continue to learn English in your country?  
You will learn more English there than here.

How will we learn more English there than here?  
You will have more time to study.

And you will already know how to pronounce English.  
Yes, you will also like it more each year.  
You will find it more interesting and easier.

Will we have a break soon?  
Yes, you'll soon have time for a break.

## SOUND AND INTONATION

Listen and repeat.

Notice the contrasts in intonation.

Will they be here on Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday?

Will they be here on Monday, Tuesday, or Wednesday?

Can she come today, tomorrow, and the next day?

Can she come today, tomorrow, or the next day?

Will we have classes at eight o'clock, nine o'clock, and ten o'clock?

Will we have classes at eight o'clock, nine o'clock, or ten o'clock?

Shall we ask Mary, Robert, and John?

Shall we ask Mary, Robert, or John?

Should I buy the blue one, the red one, and the green one?

Should I buy the blue one, the red one, or the green one?



Listen and repeat.

Do you study every day?

I study every day, but Peter doesn't.

Does this room have three doors?

This room doesn't have three doors, but that one does.

Do the students write many lessons?

They don't write many lessons, but they read them.

Am I a doctor?

No, you aren't a doctor.

You're a teacher.

Is Miss Robins here today?

No, she isn't here today.

She's at home.

It's not late, it's early.

We don't study French, we study English.

They're coming today, not tomorrow.

You should study more, not less.

The teacher said lesson twelve, not lesson ten.

I want to go to Chicago, not New York.

**APPENDIX**

<u>Part</u>		<u>Page</u>
I	The English Alphabet	318
II	American English Sounds	319
III	Principal Parts of Certain Irregular Verbs	323
IV	Patterns of Irregular Verbs	325
V	Examples of Conjugations	327
VI	Four Important Spelling Rules	330
VII	List of Contractions	333

Part I

## THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

	<u>Typescript</u>		<u>Italics</u>	<u>Longhand</u>	
	<u>Capital</u>	<u>Small</u>		<u>Capital</u>	<u>Small</u>
1.	A	a	<i>a</i>	A	a
2.	B	b	<i>b</i>	B	b
3.	C	c	<i>c</i>	C	c
4.	D	d	<i>d</i>	D	d
5.	E	e	<i>e</i>	E	e
6.	F	f	<i>f</i>	F	f
7.	G	g	<i>g</i>	G	g
8.	H	h	<i>h</i>	H	h
9.	I	i	<i>i</i>	I	i
10.	J	j	<i>j</i>	J	j
11.	K	k	<i>k</i>	K	k
12.	L	l	<i>l</i>	L	l
13.	M	m	<i>m</i>	M	m
14.	N	n	<i>n</i>	N	n
15.	O	o	<i>o</i>	O	o
16.	P	p	<i>p</i>	P	p
17.	Q	q	<i>q</i>	Q	q
18.	R	r	<i>r</i>	R	r
19.	S	s	<i>s</i>	S	s
20.	T	t	<i>t</i>	T	t
21.	U	u	<i>u</i>	U	u
22.	V	v	<i>v</i>	V	v
23.	W	w	<i>w</i>	W	w
24.	X	x	<i>x</i>	X	x
25.	Y	y	<i>y</i>	Y	y
26.	Z	z	<i>z</i>	Z	z

**AMERICAN ENGLISH SOUNDS****Part II**

English is not spelled phonetically. The same sound is spelled several different ways. For this reason it is helpful to assign separate symbols to each sound. The following system is a modified version of the IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) system. Twenty-four (24) consonant symbols, eleven (11) vowel symbols, and three (3) symbols representing diphthongs are used to represent the significant sounds of American English.

These charts are only aids and not to be memorized. However, the student must be aware of the different sounds represented in these charts. He must be able to recognize and repeat them accurately.

## CONSONANT CHART

### Place of Articulation

Manner of Articulation	Place of Articulation																
	Lips		Lower Lip & Teeth		Tip of Tongue & Teeth		Tip of Tongue & Tooth Ridge		Blade of Tongue & Tooth Ridge		Middle or Front of Tongue & Hard Palate		Back of Tongue & Soft Palate		Glottis		
	u*	v*	u	v	u	v	u	v	u	v	u	v	u	v	u	v	
<b>Stops</b>	/p/ 1	/b/ 2						/t/ 3	/d/ 4					/k/ 5	/g/ 6		
<b>Nasals</b>		/m/ 7						/n/ 8						/ŋ/ 9			
<b>Lateral Glide</b>								/l/ 10									
<b>Fricatives</b>			/f/ 11	/v/ 12	/θ/ 13	/ð/ 14	/s/ 15	/z/ 16	/ʃ/ 17	/ʒ/ 18							/h/ 19
<b>Affricates</b>									/tʃ/ 20	/dʒ/ 21							
<b>Glides</b>		/w/ 22						/r/ 23				/y/ 24					

\*Note: u and v are abbreviations for "unvoiced" and "voiced."

### EXAMPLES

- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| 1. /p/ <u>past</u> , <u>stop</u>       | 9. /ŋ/ <u>learn</u> <u>ing</u> , <u>writ</u> <u>ing</u>                  | 17. /ʃ/ <u>she</u> , <u>sho</u> <u>uld</u>             |
| 2. /b/ <u>be</u> , <u>bee</u> <u>n</u> | 10. /l/ <u>sh</u> <u>all</u> , <u>le</u> <u>ft</u>                       | 18. /ʒ/ <u>meas</u> <u>ure</u> , <u>vis</u> <u>ion</u> |
| 3. /t/ <u>two</u> , <u>went</u>        | 11. /f/ <u>if</u> , <u>af</u> <u>ter</u>                                 | 19. /h/ <u>he</u> , <u>h</u> <u>im</u>                 |
| 4. /d/ <u>do</u> , <u>did</u>          | 12. /v/ <u>vow</u> <u>els</u> , <u>vo</u> <u>iced</u>                    | 20. /tʃ/ <u>ch</u> <u>eck</u> , <u>ea</u> <u>ch</u>    |
| 5. /k/ <u>can</u> , <u>can't</u>       | 13. /θ/ <u>bo</u> <u>th</u> , <u>Th</u> <u>ursday</u>                    | 21. /dʒ/ <u>rid</u> <u>ge</u> , <u>jaw</u>             |
| 6. /g/ <u>get</u> , <u>got</u>         | 14. /ð/ <u>the</u> , <u>the</u> <u>y</u>                                 | 22. /w/ <u>we</u> , <u>will</u>                        |
| 7. /m/ <u>me</u> , <u>my</u>           | 15. /s/ <u>stop</u> <u>s</u> , <u>con</u> <u>son</u> <u>ant</u> <u>s</u> | 23. /r/ <u>run</u> , <u>ar</u> <u>ound</u>             |
| 8. /n/ <u>no</u> , <u>not</u>          | 16. /z/ <u>is</u> , <u>was</u>   | 24. /y/ <u>your</u> , <u>yo</u> <u>urs</u>             |

## CONSONANTS

	<u>Symbols</u>	<u>Examples</u>
1	p	past, stop, put, paper
2.	b	bed, baby, barber, lab
3.	t	take, water, sent, ten
4.	d	date, student, do, hard
5.	k	car, chemical, recorder, book
6.	g	gas, eggs, dog, cigar
7.	m	am, my, number, from
8.	n	no, line, find, noon
9.	ŋ	sing, long, wrong, rank
10.	l	well, laboratory, always, let
11.	f	farmer, affirmative, phrase, laugh
12.	v	very, give, live, seven
13.	θ	thank, Thursday, bath, north
14.	ð	the, this, these, weather, there
15.	s	see, this, lesson, tapes
16.	z	zero, rose, blows, dozen
17.	ʃ	ship, nation, should, push
18.	ʒ	pleasure, measure, usual
19.	h	have, he, how, hot
20.	tʃ	chair, teacher, picture, March
21.	dʒ	judge, bridge, page, July
22.	w	we, walk, wish, away, why
23.	r	read, course, for, write
24.	y	yes, you, yesterday, young

## VOWELS

<u>Symbols</u>	<u>Examples</u>
1. i	teach, meet, he, machine, chief
2. ɪ	sit, in, is, big
3. e	make, day, train, vein, steak
4. ɛ	met, let, said, bread
5. æ	cash, half, laugh, hand
6. a	far, farmer, heart, not, hot
7. ɔ	all, saw, bought, thought, taught
8. o	go, know, coat, toe, pole
9. u	good, should, would, book, took
10. ʊ	food, blue, blew, do, soup
11. ə	cup, enough, ago, son, sun
12. aɪ	I, tie, buy, my, write
13. ɔɪ	oil, boy, join, point
14. aʊ	now, town, mouth, out

## Part III

## PRINCIPAL PARTS OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR VERBS

<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>	<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
arise	arose	arisen	get	got	gotten (got)
awake	awoke	awakened	give	gave	given
	was	been	grind	ground	ground
bear	bore	borne	grow	grew	grown
beat	beat	beaten	hang	hung	hung
become	became	become	have	had	had
begin	began	begun	hear	heard	heard
bend	bent	bent	hide	hid	hidden
	bet	bet	hit	hit	hit
bind	bound	bound	hold	held	held
bid	bid	bid	hurt	hurt	hurt
bite	bit	bitten			
bleed	bled	bled	keep	kept	kept
blow	blew	blown	know	knew	known
break	broke	broken			
bring	brought	brought	lay	laid	laid
build	built	built	lead	led	led
burst	burst	burst	leave	left	left
buy	bought	bought	lend	lent	lent
			let	let	let
cast	cast	cast	lie	lay	lain
catch	caught	caught	light	lit	lit (lighted)
choose	chose	chosen	lose	lost	lost
come	came	come			
cost	cost	cost	make	made	made
creep	crept	crept	mean	meant	meant
cut	cut	cut	meet	met	met
deal	dealt	dealt			
dig	dug	dug	pay	paid	paid
do	did	done	put	put	put
draw	drew	drawn			
drink	drank	drunk	quit	quit	quit
drive	drove	driven			
			read	read	read
eat	ate	eaten	ride	rode	ridden
			ring	rang	rung
fall	fell	fallen	rise	rose	risen
feed	fed	fed	run	ran	run
feel	felt	felt			
fight	fought	fought	say	said	said
find	found	found	see	saw	seen
flee	fled	fled	seek	sought	sought
fly	flew	flown	shake	shook	shaken
forget	forgot	forgotten	sell	sold	sold
forgive	forgave	forgiven	send	sent	sent
freeze	froze	frozen	set	set	set



## IRREGULAR VERBS (Continued)

<u>Present</u>	<u>Past</u>	<u>Past Participle</u>
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
slit	slit	slit
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spin	spun	spun
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
strike	struck	struck
string	strung	strung
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swam
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke (waked)	woke (waked)
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet	wet	wet
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

Part IV**PATTERNS OF IRREGULAR VERBS****1. Three Principal Parts the Same**

hit	hit	hit	bid	bid	bid
quit	quit	quit	hurt	hurt	hurt
split	split	split	burst	burst	burst
bet	bet	bet	cost	cost	cost
let	let	let	shed	shed	shed
set	set	set	spread	spread	spread
put	put	put	cast	cast	cast
cut	cut	cut			
shut	shut	shut			

**2. Last Two Principal Parts the Same****a. Final Consonant Change Only**

have	had	had
make	made	made
build	built	built
bend	bent	bent
spend	spent	spent
send	sent	sent

**b. Vowel Change Only**

meet	met	met
read	read	read
bleed	bled	bled
feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
light	lit	lit
slide	slid	slid
sit	sat	sat
shoot	shot	shot
hold	held	held
win	won	won
shine	shone	shone
find	found	found
wind	wound	wound
bind	bound	bound
dig	dug	dug
stick	stuck	stuck
strike	struck	struck

c. Vowel Change - Addition of -t or -d

sleep	slept	slept	mean	meant	meant
keep	kept	kept	leave	left	left
creep	crept	crept			
weep	wept	wept	flee	fled	fled
			tell	told	told
think	thought	thought	sell	sold	sold
teach	taught	taught			
buy	bought	bought	lose	lost	lost
catch	caught	caught			
fight	fought	fought	hear	heard	heard
seek	sought	sought	understand	understood	understood

3. Three Principal Parts Differ to Some Extenta. No Similarity

be	was	been
go	went	gone
do	did	done

b. Vowel Change - Addition of -n

arise	arose	arisen	ride	rode	ridden
drive	drove	driven	rise	rose	risen
fly	flew	flown			

c. Vowel Change - No -n

sing	sang	sung	swim	swam	swum
ring	rang	rung			
drink	drank	drunk	begin	began	begun

d. First and Third Vowels Similar

blow	blew	blown	run	ran	run
know	knew	known	come	came	come
grow	grew	grown			
throw	threw	thrown	eat	ate	eaten
			give	gave	given
			see	saw	seen
			draw	drew	drawn

e. Second and Third Vowels Similar

break	broke	broken	tear	tore	torn
speak	spoke	spoken	wear	wore	worn
choose	chose	chosen	swear	swore	sworn
steal	stole	stolen	bear	bore	born
			get	got	got (gotten)
			forget	forgot	forgotten

Part VEXAMPLES OF CONJUGATIONS

(These are examples of standard conjugations.)

Verb: To Be (Be: Simple Form)Present Tense

I am  
you are  
he, she, it is

we are  
you are  
they are

Present Perfect Tense

I have been  
you have been  
he has been

we have been  
you have been  
they have been

Past Tense

I was  
you were  
he was

we were  
you were  
they were

Past Perfect Tense

I had been  
you had been  
he had been

we had been  
you had been  
they had been

Future Tense

I will (shall) be  
you will be  
he will be

we will (shall) be  
you will be  
they will be

Future Perfect Tense

I will (shall) have been  
you will have been  
he will have been

we will (shall) have been  
you will have been  
they will have been

Verb: To Walk (Walk: Simple Form)Present Tense

I walk  
you walk  
he, she, it walks

we walk  
you walk  
they walk

Present Perfect Tense

I have walked  
you have walked  
he has walked

we have walked  
you have walked  
they have walked

Past Tense

I walked  
you walked  
he walked

we walked  
you walked  
they walked

Past Perfect Tense

I had walked  
you had walked  
he had walked

we had walked  
you had walked  
they had walked

Future Tense

I will (shall) walk  
you will walk  
he will walk

we will (shall) walk  
you will walk  
they will walk

Future Perfect Tense

I will (shall) have walked  
you will have walked  
he will have walked

we will (shall) have walked  
you will have walked  
they will have walked

Verb: To Walk (Progressive Form)Present Tense

I am walking  
 you are walking  
 he, she, it is walking

we are walking  
 you are walking  
 they are walking

Past Tense

I was walking  
 you were walking  
 he was walking

we were walking  
 you were walking  
 they were walking

Future Tense

I will (shall) be walking  
 you will be walking  
 he will be walking

we will (shall) be walking  
 you will be walking  
 they will be walking

Present Perfect Tense

I have been walking  
 you have been walking  
 he has been walking

we have been walking  
 you have been walking  
 they have been walking

Past Perfect Tense

I had been walking  
 you had been walking  
 he had been walking

we had been walking  
 you had been walking  
 they had been walking

Future Perfect Tense

I will (shall) have been walking  
 you will have been walking  
 he will have been walking

we will (shall) have been walking  
 you will have been walking  
 they will have been walking

Verb: To See (Passive Voice)Present Tense

I am seen  
 you are seen  
 he, she, it is seen

we are seen  
 you are seen  
 they are seen

Past Tense

I was seen	we were seen
you were seen	you were seen
he was seen	they were seen

Future Tense

I will (shall) be seen	we will (shall) be seen
you will be seen	you will be seen
he will be seen	they will be seen

Present Perfect Tense

I have been seen	we have been seen
you have been seen	you have been seen
he has been seen	they have been seen

Past Perfect Tense

I had been seen	we had been seen
you had been seen	you had been seen
he had been seen	they had been seen

Future Perfect Tense

I will (shall) have been seen	we will (shall) have been seen
you will have been seen	you will have been seen
he will have been seen	they will have been seen

Verb: To Be (Subjunctive Mood)

(occasionally used in conditional  
or contrary-to-the-fact situations)

Present Tense

(If) I be	(If) we be
(If) you be	(If) you be
(If) he, she, it be	(If) they be

Past Tense

(If) I were	(If) we were
(If) you were	(If) you were
(If) he, she, it were	(If) they were

Part VI

## FOUR IMPORTANT SPELLING RULES

There are four spelling rules which will help you spell thousands of words.

Rule 1. Words Ending in Silent -e.

**SHORT RULE**  
Before a vowel, drop the -e.  
Before a consonant, let it be.

When a word ends in silent -e, drop the -e before a suffix beginning with a vowel, but retain it before one beginning with a consonant.

Notice what happens to the final -e in the following words when a suffix is added.

close	closed	closing
take	taker	taking
arrange	arrangement	arranging

Rule 2. Final Consonants

C = Consonant  
V = Vowel

**SHORT RULE**  
Double one C after one V  
if it accented be.

When a word ends in a single consonant after a single vowel in an accented syllable, you double the consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel.

Notice what happens in these words of one syllable:

stop	stopped	stopping	stopper
begin		beginning	beginner
help	helped	helping	helper

Now look at these words:

ship	shipped	shipping,	shipment
------	---------	-----------	----------

The same general rule applies to words of more than one syllable if the accent falls on the last syllable.

prefer <sup>ˈ</sup>	preferred	preferring
refer <sup>ˈ</sup>	referred	referring

But look at these words:

prefer <sup>ˈ</sup>	préferable
refer <sup>ˈ</sup>	référence

They end in a single consonant with a single vowel before it and are accented on the last syllable. But the final consonant is not doubled before the suffix even though it begins with a vowel.

Notice what happens to the accent in these words when the suffix is added; it is shifted forward. When the accent does not remain on the syllable, the final consonant is usually not doubled before a suffix.

The final consonant in any word is doubled before a suffix only under these conditions:

- a. The word must end in one consonant with one vowel before it.
- b. If the word has more than one syllable, the accent must be on the last syllable and remain on the same syllable.
- c. The suffix must begin with a vowel.

Rule 3. Final -y

**SHORT RULE**  
After a consonant, -y becomes -i.  
After a vowel, -y stays -y.

If a consonant comes before final -y, -y changes to -i before all suffixes except -ing.

If a vowel comes before -y, -y does not change.

Notice these words with a consonant before final -y:

carry	carried	carries	carrying
marry	married	marries	marrying
study	studied	studies	studying

Notice these words with a vowel before final -y:

delay	delayed	delays	delaying
journey	journeyed	journeys	journeying
employ	employed	employs	employing

Notice these exceptions:

day	daily	
lay	laid	lain
pay	paid	



Rule 4. ei and ie**SHORT RULE**

Write i before e except after c  
or when sounded like /e/ as in  
neighbor and weigh.

Notice these principal situations in which the ei - ie problem arises:

a. i before e (This covers most of the problem words.)

believe	piece
friend	niece

b. e before i after c

deceive	receipt
receive	ceiling

c. e before i when sounded like /a/

eight  
neighbor  
weigh

Notice these exceptions:

either	their	foreign
neither	seize	leisure

Part VII

## LIST OF CONTRACTIONS

aren't	(are not)
can't	(cannot)
couldn't	(could not)
didn't	(did not)
doesn't	(does not)
don't	(do not)
haven't	(have not)
he'll	(he will)
I'm	(I am)
I'll	(I will or I shall)
isn't	(is not)
it's	(it is)
let's	(let us)
mustn't	(must not)
shouldn't	(should not)
that's	(that is)
they're	(they are)
we'll	(we will or we shall)
we're	(we are)
what's	(what is)
won't	(will not)
we've	(we have)
who's	(who is)
wouldn't	(would not)
you'll	(you will)
you're	(you are)
you've	(you have)

## INDEX

## Adjectives

comparison of equals, 72-75, 135  
 comparison of unequals, 76, 78  
 no - not, 71, 72  
 some - any, 71

## Adverbs of frequency

never, ever, 40-42  
 still, already, yet, 43  
 not, 71  
 too, either, but, 258

But, 258

## Consonants

/ ɪ /, / θ /, 29  
 / l /, 57, 123  
 / r /, 92, 123  
 / v /, / w /, 184  
 / r / + another consonant, 214  
 final clusters, 249  
 initial clusters, 215, 282  
 medial cluster, 282

Count nouns, 259, 292

Either, 258

Future tense, 10

## Intonation

"or alternative" pattern, 214  
 "and sequence" pattern, 249

Mass nouns, 259, 292

## Modal auxiliaries

could - can, 101, 196  
 might - may, 101, 102, 196  
 would - will, 101, 103, 105, 197  
 must, 101, 104, 105  
 should, 101, 104, 105

in contractions, 101  
 in negative forms, 101  
 in questions, 101-104  
 in statements, 101-104

No - not, 71, 72

## Nouns

count, 259, 292  
 mass, 259, 292

## Object

direct, 261, 262  
 indirect, 261, 262, 291

## Present perfect tense

in affirmative statements, 166, 167  
 in interrogative sentences, 166  
 in negative sentences, 166, 167

## Progressive verb forms

present tense, 8, 138  
 past tense, 8, 138

## Questions

formation from statements, 231,  
 232, 233

Question words, review of, 135

### Sounds

reduced, 92, 183

### Special expressions

get on, get off, 3  
 expect to, plan to, hope to, want to, 12, 13  
 by car, bus, plane, taxi, train, cab, 39  
 shall I, we, 43  
 look for, as - as, try on, take off, 66  
 take a look at, anything else, 67  
 pick up, 195  
 have in mind, 69  
 make up (my) mind, change (my) mind, 188  
 sound like, take in, 194  
 turn on, off, 219  
 look forward to, 256

### Stress

on adverbs, 56  
 on auxiliary verbs, 122  
 patterns within sentences, 314  
 use to convey meaning, 281

Too, 258

### Verbs

future tense, 10, 11, 140, 293  
 irregular, 169, 234  
 modal auxiliaries, 101-105, 196  
 present perfect tense, 165, 167  
 progressive verb forms, 138, 192

### Vowels

reduced in comparison expression as - as, 92